STANDARD CHINESE
A Modular Approach

MODULE 8:
TRAVELING IN CHINA
STUDENT TEXT AND WORKBOOK

SPONSORED BY
AGENCIES OF THE UNITED STATES AND CANADIAN GOVERNMENTS
This publication is to be used primarily in support of training military personnel as part of the Defense Language Program (resident and non-resident). Inquiries concerning the use of materials, including requests for copies, should be addressed to:

Defense Language Institute  
Foreign Language Center  
Nonresident Instruction Division  
Presidio of Monterey, CA 93940

Topics in the areas of politics, international relations, mores, etc., which may be considered as controversial from some points of view are sometimes included in language training for DLIFLC students, since military personnel may find themselves in positions where clear understanding of conversations or written material of this nature will be essential to their mission. The presence of controversial statements—whether real or apparent—in DLIFLC materials should not be construed as representing the opinions of the writers, of the Defense Language Institute, or of the Department of Defense.

In DLIFLC publications, the words "he," "him," and "his" denote both masculine and feminine genders. This statement does not apply to translations of foreign language texts.
STANDARD CHINESE
A MODULAR APPROACH

STUDENT TEXT AND WORKBOOK

MODULE 8: TRAVELING IN CHINA

DRAFT EDITION

JULY 1982
Table of Contents

Objectives for the Travel Module

About Module Eight

Unit 1  Travel Plans with Lüxingshè
- Reference List
- Vocabulary List
- Reference Notes
- Tape 1 Review Dialogue
- Tape 2 Workbook
- Exercise Dialogues

Unit 2  Education in Sěijīng
- Reference List
- Vocabulary List
- Reference Notes
- Tape 1 Review Dialogue
- Tape 2 Workbook
- Exercise Dialogues

Unit 3  Sěijīng People's Commune
- Reference List
- Vocabulary List
- Reference Notes
- Tape 1 Review Dialogue
- Tape 2 Workbook
- Exercise Dialogues

Unit 4  Ancient Architectural Art
- Reference List
- Vocabulary List
- Reference Notes
- Tape 1 Review Dialogue
- Tape 2 Workbook
- Exercise Dialogues

Unit 5  Economic Construction and Natural Resources
- Reference List
- Vocabulary List
- Reference Notes
- Tape 1 Review Dialogue
- Tape 2 Workbook
- Exercise Dialogues
Unit 6  National Minorities

Reference List  
Vocabulary List  
Reference Notes  
Tape 1 Review Dialogue  
Tape 2 Workbook  
Exercise Dialogues  

Unit 7

Reference List  
Vocabulary List  
Reference Notes  
Tape 1 Review Dialogue  
Tape 2 Workbook  
Exercise Dialogues  

Unit 8

Reference List  
Vocabulary List  
Reference Notes  
Tape 1 Review Dialogue  
Tape 2 Workbook  
Exercise Dialogues  

Vocabulary List for the Module  

List of Tapes in this Module
Unit 1, Reference List

1. A: Wǒmen zāime chēnghuò nǐn báo ne?  
B: Lái zhèlǐ cānguān fāngwènde rèn dōu jiào wǒ Lǎo Wāng.  

2. A: Nǐn xiǎng zhěijiàn shì zěmme ānpǎi bǐjiāo hǎo?  
B: Wǒ xiǎng zuì hǎo děng wǒ hě Shānghǎi fāngmiàn liǎnxì yǐxià zāi shuō.  

3. A: Tíngshuō nǐn duì zhě yǐdài de fāngyuán hěn yǒu yānjiù.  
B: Nǎli! Wǒ zhī shì lǐjiān yǐdàiār, tānbudào yǒu yānjiù.  

4. A: Xiànsài Zhōngguó yòngde shìyòu dāběn shì zǐjǐ shāngchǎnè, duì bā?  
B: Bù, quānnǚ shì zǐjǐ shāngchǎnè.  

5. A: Dāběn běifāng rèn dōu hú shuò pǔtōnghuà, duì bu duì?  
B: Òu, bù zhī shì běifāng rèn, hěn dōu nánfāng rènde pǔtōnghuà yě bù cuò.  

B: Ò, zhèmē mài! Wǒ nǐ yīwéi nǐ nèng gèn wǒmen dào Sūzhōu qù wànxi ījiān ne!  

7. A: Dōngběi, Xīběi nǐ dōu qù gōu le bā?  
B: Zài Dōngběi wǒ zhī cānguānle Dāqīng, Xīběi hái méi qù ne.  

How should we address you?  
People who come here to visit all call me Lǎo Wāng.  
What do you think would be the best way to arrange this?  
I think it would be best to wait until I've contacted Shānghǎi and then we'll see about it.  
I've heard that you're an expert on the dialect of this area.  
Oh no! I just know a little about it; I couldn't say I'm an expert.  
China now produces most of the oil that it uses, isn't that right?  
No, they produce all of it.  
Most northerners can speak the standard language, can't they?  
Oh, not just northerners. A lot of southerners speak standard Chinese pretty well, too.  
Tomorrow I'm going to leave the country from Shānzhèn.  
Oh, so soon! I thought you could go with us to Sūzhōu for a few days.  
You've been to Manchuria and the Northwest, haven't you?  
In Manchuria I've only visited Dāqīng, and I haven't been to the Northwest yet.
8. A: 你現在好啦，我們就來。
   B: 好。會過後見。

9. A: 慶為誰做研究的實在扱呢？
   B: 他現在主要研究哲學。

10. A: 在新疆內蒙古有什麼民族語言？
    B: 對，現在地方，
      西安時民族語言
      的確比重。

11. A: 女人想個地方去嗎？你想要去那裡嗎？
    B: 我現在就去吧，
      旅行團都去，我們很高興。

12. 旅行團

13. 西安

14. 西寧

15. 廣西

16. 桂林

17. 河北

18. 蘇南

19. 黃山

You go ahead and leave. I’ll be right there.
Okay. See you in a while.
What subject does this scholar study?
She mainly studies languages and linguistics.
In the region of Xinjiang and Inner Mongolia not many people speak standard Chinese, do they?
Right. In those places the minority nationality languages occupy the major position.
Have you been to all the regions you wanted to go to? Do you have any more questions?
We don’t have any more questions.
The China Travel Service did a very good job and we’re very pleased.
tour group
(an autonomous region, formerly spelled Kwangsi)
(a famous scenic city in Guangxi)
(a province in southern China)
(a province, formerly spelled Kweichow)
north China
south China
(a famous scenic mountain in Anhui province)
Unit 1, Vocabulary List

ānpái to arrange
běifāng the north
běijīāo comparatively
cānguān to visit and observe
cēnghu to call
dābùfen mostly
dài zone, area, belt
Dàqīng (a city in Hěilóngjiāng province)
dìqū area, district, region
Dōngběi Manchuria
fǎngwèn to visit and meet with
diànyán dialect
gǎo to do
Guāngzhōu (a province in south China)
Guīlín (a city in Guāngxi province)
Guīzhōu (a province of China)
Huáběi north of China
Huánhán south of China
Huángshān (a mountain in Anhui province)
huìlóu jiàn See you later!
lǐánxiè to contact
lǐxiàngjiè to understand
lǐ jǐng to leave a country or place
liúxíngshè travel service, travel agency
liúxíngtuán tour group
mínzú ethnic group, nation
nánfāng the south
Nèimínɡ Inner Mongolia
pǔtōnghuà the common (standard) language
quán entirely
quánbù entire, whole
shǎoshù small number, few, minority
shǎoshù mínzú minority nationality
Shēnzhèn (a city in Guǎngdōng province)
shìyóu petroleum, oil
Xīběi
Xīnjiāng
xuézhě

yǐwéi
Yǔnnán
yǔyán
yǔyánxué

...zài shuō
zhān
zhǔyào

northwest
(an autonomous region of China)
scholar

to think (mistakenly), to assume
(a province of China)
language
linguistics

...and then we'll see about it
to occupy, to take up
main, mainly
TVL, Unit 1

Unit 1, Reference Notes

1. A: Wǒmen zěnme chēnghu nín hāo ne? How should we address you?

   B: Lái zhèlǐ cānguān fāngwènèr rén dōu jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng. People who come here to visit all call me Lǎo Wáng.

Notes on No. 1

Asking how to address someone: If you are not sure how to address some-
one, it is usually acceptable to ask the person himself. Most Chinese recognize that they have a complicated system of terms of address, and are happy to answer such questions.

chēnghu: "to address” or "form of address"

 Kuài gāosu wo, wǒ gāi zěnme chēnghu nǐde fūmǔ ne? Quick tell me: how should I address your parents?

 Xiāng "Xiǎo Wáng,” "Lǎo Zhāng” Forms of address like "Xiǎo Wáng” zhèlǐzhōng chēnghu xiānzài hěn liúxing le. and "Lǎo Zhāng" are now very common.

... hāo ne?: "Would it be best to ... ?” Wǒmen zěnme chēnghu nín acts as the subject of the verb hāo. Here is a diagram:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wǒmen zěnme chēnghu nín</th>
<th>hāo ne?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ([For] us to address you how | [would] be good?)

"How would it be best for us to address you?"

For sentences with a similar structure, compare 2A and 8A below. Here are three further examples:

Zěnme zuǒ hāo? What should I do?

Zěnme chī hāo ne? How should it be cooked (lit., "eaten")?

Wǒ zhēn bù zhídào gāosu ta hāo ne, hāishi bù gāosu ta hāo? I really don’t know whether I should tell him or not.

Cānguān, literally, "enter-look,” and fāngwèn, literally, "visit-interview,” are both sometimes translated as "to visit,” but there an important difference in their meaning: you cānguān a place (like a museum), but you fāngwèn people. Thus, cānguān is translated as "visit and observe,” and fāngwèn as "visit and talk with.” By extension, you can also fāngwèn a place, but this implies a formal visit to a country or visits to factories or offices where the visitors have a chance to talk with the responsible people and workers. In addition, fāngwèn also sometimes translates the English verb
TVL, Unit 1

"to interview." Examples:

Wǒ bù xǐhuān cānguān zhèiyàng de difāng, wǒ xiāng cānguān gōngchǎng.
I don't like to visit this kind of place. I want to visit a factory.

Duībuqǐ xiānshēng, zhèlǐ shì jūnshī diqu, bù kěyǐ cānguān.
I'm sorry, sir. This is a military zone; sightseeing is not permitted.

Qùnián wǒ zài Zhōngguó fāngwènle liàngge gānbù jiātǐng.
Last year in China I visited two cadres' families.

Zài liàngge xīnqílǐ, tāmén fāngwènle liùge chéngshì.
They visited six cities in two weeks. (Implies that they talked with city officials.)

Zhè zhēn shì yīcì yǒu yīside fāngwèn.
This was really an interesting visit.

Zuòtiān tāmén qu fāngwènle yǐwéi yǒu mǐngde Zhōngguó xuézhē.
Yesterday they went to interview a famous Chinese scholar.

2. A: Nǐn xiāng zhèjìjiàn shì zěnme ānpáí bǐjǐnhào?
What do you think would be the best way to arrange this?

B: Wǒ xiāng zuì hǎo děng wǒ hé Shànghǎi fāngmian liánxi yǐxià zài shūǒ.
I think it would be best to wait until I've contacted Shànghǎi and then we'll see about it.

Notes on No. 2

The structure of sentence 2A, which is similar to that of 1A, can be diagrammed this way:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zhèjìjiàn shì</th>
<th>zěnme ānpáí</th>
<th>bǐjǐnhào?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>([As for] this matter</td>
<td>how arrange</td>
<td>[would be] comparatively better?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ānpáí: "to arrange," "to set up"

Tā zhōngshí bā shǐjìjiān ānpáide hěn hǎo.
He always arranges his time well.

Wǒ xiān bā zhúzǐ ānpái hǎo, kèrén kùi lāi le.
First arrange the tables; the guests will be here soon.

Tā Sānyuè yīqí jiù bù zài zhēr, bǐ ānpáí dào biéde difāng qu le.
He had left here even before March, having been assigned to another location.
bījiāo or bījiào: (1) "Comparatively," "relatively," "more" is the meaning in sentence 2A. Bījiāo also has the following meanings:

(2) "to compare":

Yàoshi bījiāo zhè liàngge chéng¬shī, wǒ háishi xīhuàn Hángzhōu. If you compare these two cities, I prefer Hángzhōu.

Wǒmen kěyì bījiāo yixia shéi zuòde hǎo. We can compare who did it better.

(3) "fairly," "rather"

Jìntiān bījiāo lěng, duō chuān diǎnr yīfù. It's rather cold today, put on some clothing.

Context will often tell you whether bījiāo as an adverb implies a comparison (in which case it should be translated as "comparatively," "relatively," or "more") or does not imply a comparison (in which case it should be translated as "rather" or "fairly").

Tā shì bījiāo ěr jiāng huàde rén. He is a rather talkative person.

Zhēi liàngge bānfa, nèige bījiāo yǒu xiào? Of these two methods, which is more effective?
Dièrge bānfa bījiāo yǒu xiào. The second is more effective.

Cóng zhèr dào chéngli qù, zuò dítiē bījiāo kuài yìdiǎnr. To go into the city from here, it's somewhat faster by subway.

Shànghǎi fāngmía: Literally, "the Shànghǎi side," meaning the concerned party in Shànghǎi. In this sentence, the best English translation is simply "Shànghǎi." For more examples of this use of fāngmía, see the Society module, Unit 1, Notes on No. 8.

liánxi: "to contact," "to get in touch with," or as a noun, "connection," "ties." Liánxi can be between individual people, groups, or phenomena:

Wǒmen yǐjīng yǒu liǎnghǎn qíng le, bù zhīdao tā zújìn zěnmeyàng. We haven't been in touch for two or three years. I wonder how he has been lately.

Zhēi liǎngge wèntí méiyǒu shèmén liánxi. There's no connection between these two questions.

Zhōu yīn nián lái, Zhōng-Měi liǎnghuò liánxi yuè lái yuè guǎng le. In the past few years, ties between China and the U.S. have been getting broader and broader.

liánxi yǐxià: Yǐxià here is used the same way as in a sentence you learned in the Meeting module, Unit 8: Wǒ tī ni chūnjiāo yǐxià. "I will pass on the message for you." Yǐxià means "one time," and simply adds a casual feeling, similar to the effect of reduplicating a verb. (Yǐxià here is not translated as "a while" or "a little bit.") Reduplicating the verb
TVL, Unit 1

has about the same meaning: liánxì liánxì.

Děng . . . zài shuō literally means "Wait until . . . and then talk about it." Zài shuō is often better translated as "see about it" or "deal with it." Děng can sometimes be translated simply as "when."

Míngtiān zài shuō. We'll see about that tomorrow.

Děng tā lǎile zài shuō. We'll see about that when he gets here.

Wǒmen xiān shǐshì kàn zài shuō. Let's try it out first and then see about it.

3. A: Tīngshuō nǐn duì zhēi yǐdài de fàngyán hěn yǒu yánjìù. I've heard that you're an expert on the dialect of this area.

B: Nǎli? Wǒ zhī shì liǎojiě yǐdài. Rén, tānbudào yǒu yánjìù. Oh no! I just know a little about it; I couldn't say I'm an expert.

Notes on No. 3

-dài: "zone," "area," "belt" The original meaning of dài is a belt or band, as in pídài, "leather belt," lùyíndài, "recording tape," and xiēdài, "shoelaces." It is easy to see why it has also come to mean "belt" in a geographical sense, and by extension, "zone" or "area." -Dài is used in such words as rědài (literally "hot-zone") "the tropics," and dídài, "zone," "region." It is also used in the common phrases zhēi yǐdài, "this area," and yánběi yǐdài, "coastal region" (you will learn yánběi in Unit 5 of this module).

Zhēi yǐdài wǎnshàng hěn wéixiān. This area is dangerous at night.

Nǐ yíge rén chūqū dǎ xiǎoxīn dīnr. You'd better be careful if you go out alone.

You can use names of regions in the pattern . . . yǐdài:

Tīng nǐ shuō huà, nǐ dǎgāi shì Shānběi yǐdài rén. From the way you speak, I'd guess you're from the area of northern Shānxi.

fàngyán: "dialect" (fāng-), as in dīfāng, "place," here means "local." -Yán forms part of the word yánlù, "language," which is presented in sentence 9B.) In linguistics, the word fàngyán is used as we use the word "dialect." In common Chinese usage, fàngyán also refers to the various Chinese languages (such as Cantonese) which are not intelligible to a speaker of Standard Chinese. See also the note on pǔtōnghuà under Number 5.

liǎojiě: As a state verb, "to understand," "to grasp," "to comprehend," and as an action verb, "to find out," "to acquaint oneself with." As a state verb, it can be used in the pattern duì . . . liǎojiě (see the fourth and fifth examples below).
TVL, Unit 1

As a state verb

NY bù liǎojiē qǐngkuāng. You don't understand the situation.
Tā hěn liǎojiē nàlìde qǐngkuāng. He understands the situation there quite well.
Tāde guōqù, wǒ liǎojiēde fēi-cháng qǐngchū. I am very familiar with his past history.
NY duì tā hài bù liǎojiē. You still don't understand him.
Dui Zhōngguó lǐshǐ wǒ liǎojiēde bù gōu. I don't know enough about Chinese history.

As an action verb

NY dào nàr qù yīqián zuì hǎo liǎojiē yīxià nàrde fēnggú. Before you go there, you would do well to acquaint yourself with the (local) customs.
Wǒ xǐāng liǎojiē liǎojiē rén-mín shēnghuóde qǐngkuāng. I would like to find out about the (daily) life of the people.

When the word "know" means to understand a person, it must be translated into Chinese as liǎojiē:

Tā shìrén zuì liǎojiē ta. His wife knows him best. (or "Her husband . . . .")

(Rènzhī tā simply means "to be acquainted with him," and zhīdào tā means "to know of him.")

tái bu dào: "cannot speak of . . . ." A polite response to flattering comments. After tái bu dào, you usually repeat the words of the first speaker, e.g.,

A: NY duì Měiguó wénhuà hěn liǎojiē. You understand American culture very well.
B: Tái bu dào liǎojiē, wǒ zhī shì duì zhèifāngmiàn hěn yǒu xīngqu. It's kind of you to say so ("One cannot speak of understanding it"), but I'm just very interested in it.

4. A: Xiànzǎi Zhōngguó yōngde shǐyòu dàbúfēn shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde, duì ba?
B: Ê, guǎn bā shì zìjǐ shēngchǎnde. China now produces most of the oil that it uses, isn't that right?

No, they produce all of it.

Notes on No. 4

shǐyòu: "petroleum," "oil" (literally, "rock-oil," which, incidentally.
is also the meaning of the English word "petroleum") Examples: shiyou gongye, "the oil industry"; shiyu huaxue, "petrochemistry."

daoben: "the most part," "for the most part," "mostly" The stress in this word is on the syllable da-, and in conversation, the middle syllable, -bu-, is often neutral tone (you may even hear what sounds like daoben, with the y sound missing).

Use daoben to modify a verb or a noun:

Migu ren daoben dou you ziyde che. 
Most Americans have their own car. 

Daoben Migu ren dou you ziyde che. 

dui ba?: "isn't that correct?" "isn't that so?" You have already learned to ask for the listener's confirmation by using shi bu shi? or shi ma? and dui bu dui? or dui ma? at the end of a sentence. Shi ba? and dui ba? are also used in the same sentence position to ask for confirmation, but because of the marker ba, they imply that the speaker is fairly sure that his information is correct.

quanbu: "entire," "whole," "all"

Zhexi shu wo quanbu dou kanguo le. 
I've read all of these books. 

Tade qian quanbu yong zai lixianghang le. 
His money was all used up by the trip. 
("used on the trip")

Ta gei wode gongzu, wo hai mei quanbu zuowan me. 
I haven't finished all of the work he gave me yet. 

Ta shuode hu quanbu mei yong. 
Everything he said is nonsense (worthless, useless).

Nyu bu zhidao tade quanbu qingkuang zemme neng he ta jishun? 
How can you marry him without knowing his whole situation?

5. A: Daoben baifang ren dou hui shuougonghu, dui bu dui?

Most northerners can speak the standard language, can't they?

B: Ou, bu zhi shi baifang ren, hen duou nanfang rende pugonghua ye bu cuo.
Oh, not just northerners. A lot of southerners speak standard Chinese pretty well, too.

Notes on No. 5

Baifang, "the north" of a country, and nanfang, "the south" of a country: When used with reference to China, these terms usually mean the area north of the Huang He (Yellow River) and the area south of the Changjiang (Yangtze River), respectively. The area between the rivers is usually considered central China.
TYL, Unit 1

Běifāng rén xǐhuan chī miànshí, nánfāng rén xǐhuan chī mìfàn. Northerners like to eat foods made from wheat, and southerners like to eat rice.

Tāde Zhōngguó huà yǒu nánfāng kǒuyīn. His Chinese has a southern accent.

pǔtōnghuà: "the common speech," the usual designation in the PRC for what we have called in this course "Standard Chinese." Pǔtōnghuà is officially defined as consisting of the sound system of Běijīng speech, the vocabulary and idiom of northern speech, and the grammar of exemplary modern vernacular writings. It would be inaccurate to equate pǔtōnghuà with either běifāng huà ("northern speech") or Běijīng huà ("Běijīng speech"), because pǔtōnghuà has absorbed many elements from other dialects, contributing to its richness. Conversely, such things as purely regional expressions (including those of Běijīng itself) and non-standard pronunciations are not considered pǔtōnghuà. Before the PRC, the term pǔtōnghuà already existed, but referred to the approximations of Mandarin spoken by the common people of northern China. (In Taiwan, the term guóyǔ, "the national language," is used for the officially promoted standard language.)

bù zhī shì běifāng rén: "not just northerners" Bù zhī shì, "not only," can be followed by a noun, verb, or clause. Sometimes you may hear bù jìù shì, bù dàn shì, bù guāng shì, or bù jīn shì (which you will learn in the Life in China module), with the same meaning. The shì is necessary before a noun but may be omitted before a verb:

Wǒmen bàngōngshì bù zhī (shì) yǒu Měiguó rén, hái yǒu jīge Zhōngguó rén bāng wǒmen gōngzuò. In our office, there are not only Americans, but also some Chinese who help us.

6. A: Míngtiān wǒ jìù cōng Shēnzhèn lǐ jǐng le. Tomorrow I'm going to leave the country from Shēnzhèn.

B: Ė, zhēměi kuài! Wǒ hái yǐwéi nǐ néng gèn wǒmen dào Sūzhōu qù wǎn rì jītiān ne! Oh, so soon! I thought you could go with us to Sūzhōu for a few days.

Notes on No. 6

Shēnzhèn, formerly known by its Cantonese pronunciation, Shumchun, is the border stop on the railroad from Hong Kong to Guǎngzhōu (Canton).

lǐ jǐng: "leave a country," literally, "leave-boundary" You can also say chū lǐng.

yǐwéi: "to mistakenly think" xiǎng and rèn yǐwéi, which you will learn in the next unit, both mean "to think that . . ." Yǐwéi adds the meaning that the subject's impression was wrong.

Mǐ yǐwéi wǒ bù zhīdào?? Wǒ zǎo jiù tīngshuō le! You thought I didn't know?? I heard about it a long time ago!
Wǒ yǐwéi wǒ yīge rén kěyí nǎdedōng, shéi zhīdào nàme zhōng.

Wǒ hái yǐwéi: "I thought (mistakenly)" You have learned hái as "still" and as "also, additionally." This hái has a different meaning and is not translated. It emphasizes that the subject was under a wrong impression. This meaning of hái is most clearly seen with the verb xiǎng: Wǒ hái xiǎng means "I mist kenly thought," whereas Wǒ xiǎng does not specify whether the judgment was right or wrong.

Oh, it's you! I thought it was someone else.

Have you heard? She had a baby boy.

Oh, I didn't know! (Here, it is not a mistaken impression but the previous lack of any information on the subject which hái emphasizes)

7. A: Dōngběi, Xīběi nǐ dōu qùguō le ba?

You've been to Manchuria and the Northwest, haven't you?

B: Zài Dōngběi wǒ zhīcānguānle Dàqīng, Xīběi hái méi qù ne.

In Manchuria I've only visited Dàqīng, and I haven't been to the Northwest yet.

Notes on No. 7

Dōngběi, Xīběi: Although you learned this is in the Directions module, it bears repeating that combined direction names ("northwest," "southeast," etc.) are said in the reverse order from English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Xīběi (west-north)</th>
<th>Dōngběi (east-north)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Northwest</td>
<td>Northeast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xīnán (west-south)</td>
<td>Dōngnán (east-south)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southwest</td>
<td>Southeast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dōngběi: "the Northeast," "Manchuria." The northeastern region of China, consisting of the three provinces of Liánōng, Jīlín, and Hēilōngjiāng, is sometimes called Manchuria because the largest indigenous minority is the Manchu, or Mān, nationality. Of China's 2.6 million Mān, most live scattered throughout these three provinces and Hēběi; there are also smaller Mān populations in the cities of Běijīng, Chéngdū, Xi'ān, and Hohhot. The Mān, and before them their ancestors the Núzhēn (Nuchen or Juchen, an ancient nationality of the same region), were a major force in Chinese history from the
The three provinces of the Northeast

Xīběi: "the Northwest," a region which includes Ningxiān, Xīnjiāng, Qīnghāi, Shānxi, and Gānsū.

chīguō le: "have gone to" Notice that new-situation le may follow a verb phrase with the ending -guō. Here are some other examples:

A:  Wǒ chīguō fàn le ma?  Have you eaten yet?
B:  Chīguō le.  Yes.

A:  Tā zuì xīn de diànyǐng yǐ kàn guō le ma?  Have you seen his latest movie yet?
B:  Kàn guō le.  Yes.
TVL, Unit 1

Dàqing: An oil-producing center (recently given the status of a city) in the Sòng-hšn Plain of southern Hēilōngjiāng province. Dàqing is the nation's leading producer of crude oil, accounting for more than one third of the crude oil volume. China's oil industry has only developed since 1949, and it was the monumental exploration and drilling at Dàqing, under extremely adverse conditions, that in large part enabled China to meet her own oil needs by 1963. In 1964, Máo Zédōng called on the whole nation to learn from Dàqing in industry (Gōngyè xué Dàqíng), a slogan which continued to be heard through the Cultural Revolution.

   B: Hǎo. Huí tōu jiān. Okay. See you in a while.

Notes on No. 8

... hǎo le: The ending hǎo le, literally "and then it will be okay," has a special meaning; the translation varies with the context. It is used when the speaker (l) agrees to something, permits someone to do something, or suggests that someone do something, or (2) gives in to something, doesn't care if something happens.

1) Wǒ qù hǎo le. I'll go. (AGREEING TO DO SOMETHING)
   Zhāo nǐ shūde bān hǎo le. We'll do it your way, then. (AGREEING TO DO SOMETHING)
   NY shū Zhōngwēn hǎo le, wǒ tīngdádōng. Go ahead and speak Chinese. I understand. (SUGGESTING)
   NY náqu hǎo le, wǒ yǒngwǎn le. Go ahead and take it. I'm finished with it. (PERMITTING)

2) NY bù qù hǎo le, wǒ bù gāoxìng. So don't go, then. But I'm not happy about it.
   Ràng tā shuǐ hǎo le, wǒ bù gǔnǐ! Let him say what he wants to; I don't care!

Huí tōu jiān: "See you later" This is a Béijīng expression. Huí tōu, literally, "turn one's head," is used colloquially to mean "later," as in
   Huí tōu wǒmen zài tān. We'll talk it over later.
   Wǒ huí tōu jiù lái. I'll be there in a minute.

Use Huí tōu jiān when you expect to see the other person shortly.
9. A: Zhèwèi xuézhě yánjìùde shì
nǐfāngmiàn de wèntí?

B: Tā yánjìùde zhùyuàn shì
yīyuán hē yīyuánxué.

Notes on No. 9

xuézhě: "scholar" You will find the ending -Zhě in a number of words where it means -de rén, "a person who...." In Unit 4, you will learn gōngzuòzhě, "worker (in a certain field)." Other examples:

dúzhě reader (dú, "read," will be presented in the next module)

jízhě reporter, journalist (lit., "one who records things")

huòdézhě recipient of a prize, etc. (huòdé means "to obtain")

zhùyuàn: As an adjective, "major/main/essential," and as an adverb, "mainly," "essentially":

Qù xīběi, zhùyuàn de mùdì shì
xīn jiāng liǎo jiě yìdiǎnr guǎnyǔ
nàr de nòngyè shēngchǎn qǐngkuǎng.

Wǒmen zhèr zhùyuàn de wèntí shì
měi qián.

Nào zhùyuàn zhǎn lǎn xiè shénme?

Wǒmen zhùyuàn de wèntí shì
měi qián.

Nèng bù néng qù, zhùyuàn kàn
shì jiàn.

Tā zhùyuàn jǐng bā shì Zhōngguó-
shì shì yì shēngchǎn qǐngkuǎng.

The main reason for going to the Northwest is to find out about agricultural production there.

Our main problem here is that
we have no money.

What are the main things they exhibit there? ("What mainly do they exhibit there?")

Whether or not we can go depends
mainly on time.

He spoke mainly about China's oil production.

There are times when zhùyuàn must be translated as "essentially" rather than as "mainly," for example:

Wǒ jǐntiān lái, zhùyuàn shì
yīn wèi wǒ de péngyǒu dōu lái le.

I came today essentially because
all my friends came.

This sentence does not imply that there are any other reasons of lesser importance.

yuán: "language" The counter for a language is usually -zhǒng, "kind":

Xué yǐzhǒng yǔyuán bù shì yǐtiān
liǎngtiān de shì.

Learning a language isn't something
you can do overnight ("in a day
or two").

/5
TVL, Unit 1

Zhōngwén shì yìzhǒng bījiāo nán xuéde yǔyán.

Chinese is a rather difficult language to learn.

Tā chángcháng jìāo tamen yìxiē bù yǐnggǎi jiēde yǔyán.

He often teaches them language (words and phrases) that shouldn't be taught.

-ｙū can be used as the ending for the names of languages:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Xībānyǔ</th>
<th>Spanish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yīngyǔ</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Xībānyǔ</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hàn yǔ</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Dĕyǔ</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rìyǔ</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Fàyǔ</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ālābòyǔ</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>Œyǔ</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mǎnyǔ</td>
<td>Manchurian</td>
<td>Yǐndìyu</td>
<td>Hindi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ending -huà (as in Zhōngguó huà) refers to just the spoken language.

-Ｗēn can refer to (1) the written, or (2) the written plus the spoken. -ｙū does not differentiate spoken and written.

10. A: Zài Xīnjiāng Nèimǐng yídài méiyǒu hǎn duō rǎn shuō pǔtōnghuà bāi?

In the region of Xīnjiāng and Inner Mongolia not many people speak standard Chinese, do they?

B: Duī, zài nèi xí xiē di fāng, shǎoshù mínxì yǔyán zhàn zhù yuè dé shìwèi.

Right. In those places the minority nationality languages occupy the major position.

Notes on No. 10

Xīnjiāng: Formerly spelled Sinkiang in English. Xīnjiāng, an autonomous region (not a province) in northwest China, has the largest area of all China's provinces and autonomous regions. Population: 12 million (1981 est.), of which about 6 million are of the Uygur nationality. For a description of the region and its people, see Unit 6 Reference Notes.

Nèimǐng: Also Nèi Měngǔ. Inner Mongolia (also called Nei Monggol) is an autonomous region in north central China, population 9 million. About twenty percent of the population are Mongols. The capital is Hohhot (in Chinese, Hūhèhuòtè).

Note: The facts as represented in exchange 10 need to be qualified. It is true that the minority nationality languages are still the most widely used in the vast rural areas of Xīnjiāng, Inner Mongolia, and other minority nationality regions. The larger cities in these regions, however, now have substantial Hān Chinese populations, and in some cities the Hān are even in the majority.

shǎoshù: "minority" or "a minority of," "a small number of" This is the opposite of duōshù, "majority," which you learned in the Society module.

Tāmen shì shǎoshù. They are in the minority.
There are only a small number of Manchurians who can still speak the Manchu language.

**mínzú:** "nationality," "a people," or "nation" in the non-governmental sense: a people who share common origins, history, customs, and language. Examples: Zhōngghuá mínzú, "the Chinese nation"; Álābō mínzú, "the Arab nation"; mínzú dūguī, "national independence."

Méiguó shì yìge duō mínzú de guójī. America is a nation of many ethnic groups.

Shāoshù mínzú is "minority nationality," often translated as "national minority." In the U.S., we more often speak of "ethnic minorities," but the Chinese prefer the translation "minority nationalities."

**zhàn:** (1) "to occupy" a space, area, or position, (2) "to make up," "to constitute," a proportion of an amount, or (3) "to take up" an amount of time

Zěnme hái yǒu rén zhànzhè zhègè fāngjiān? Gāi wǒmen yǒng le! Why are there still people occupying this room? It's our turn to use it!

Zhèjīng zhōu wéi zài zhàn dīfāng le, bǎ tà bānchuqu. This table takes up too much space. Let's move it out.

Zhègè fāngzi zhàn de dīfāng yǒu duō dà? How much space does this building take up?

Zài wǒmen xuéxiào de xuéshēngzhōng, shāoshù mínzú xuéshēng zhàn yībàn zuòyǒu. Minority nationality students make up about half of the students in our school.

Xiànzài fūmǔ zài shèhuìshàng zhàn yuè lái yuè zhòngyào de diwēi le. Now women are occupying a more and more important position in society.

Zhēn dùibuqǐ, zhànle nǐ bù shǎo shìjiān. Please excuse me for taking up so much of your time.

11. A: Wǒmen xiǎōng què dīqū quán dōu qù le ba? Hái yǒu shènmé wèntí méiyou? Have you been to all the regions you wanted to go to? Do you have any more questions?

B: Mǎiyóu shènmé wèntí le, Lǐnghǎishè de gōngzuò gāode hén hǎo, wǒmen hěn mànyì. We don't have any more questions. The China Travel Service did a very good job and we're very pleased.

Notes on No. 11

**dīqū:** "region," "district," "area"
Bēijīng dìqū  the Bēijīng area
Huáběi dìqū  the north China region
duō shān dìqū  a mountainous district

quán: (1) "to be complete," (2) "whole," "entire," (3) "entirely," "completely"

Zhèjīǎo shū bù quán, dīshēn méiyǒu le. This set of books is incomplete; the fourth volume is missing.
Quàn shìjiè yǐgōng yǒu duōshǎo zhōng yǔyán? How many languages are there in the whole world?
Liāngsānnián méi shuō Zhōngwén le, chábuduō quán wàng le. After not speaking Chinese for two or three years, (I) have almost completely forgotten it.
Wǒ běi nèi jǐjiān yīfu quán gěi tā le. I gave all those articles of clothing to him.

Lùxīngshì: Short for Zhōngguó Lùxīngshì, China Travel Service (CTS), or Zhōngguó Quójiā Lùxīngshì, China International Travel Service (CITS). These are the two government agencies through which all travel arrangements in China are handled. Representatives from CITS accompany tour groups in China.

gāo: "to do," "to carry on," "to engage in," "to work in" a certain field or endeavor.

Gāo shénme ne?  What are you doing? OR What are you up to?
Zhèjiān shì wǒ gǎolái gǎoqù gǎobuhǎo. I've tried doing this all different ways and I just can't get it right.

(gāo a task or endeavor)  
{ gāo wèishēng to do cleanup 
gāo shēngchǎn to engage in production 
gāo shāhuìzhǔyì to practice socialism 
gāo Sīge Xiàndàihuà to carry on the Four Modernizations

Tā shì gāo fānyìde. He's a translator. ("He works in translation.

(gāo a line of work)  
{ Tā shì gāo wénxuède. He works in literature.
Tā shì gāo xīnwénde. He's a journalist/reporter/etc.
Tā shì gāo nóngrède. He works in agriculture.

Gāohǎo, which is especially common in political talk, means "to make a good job of (something)," or "to handle (something) well":

Gāohǎo shēngchǎn shì wǒmen zuì zhōngyāode gōngzuò. Handling production well is our most important job.
Gāo is used with many resultative verb endings (in the following two examples gāo is interchangeable with mònɡ, "to do"):

Shèi bù wǒ de chē gāochuài le? Who broke my bicycle/car?

Hái, nǐ yǒu gāccuò le, zhèige zì bù shì "niǎo," shì "wū." No, you've got it wrong again. This character isn't "niǎo," it's "wū."

Zěnmé gāode is an idiom, used as follows:

Zěnmé gāode?!!

{ What went wrong?! OR
What's wrong?! OR
What the . . . ?!

A: Tā shuō tā bù lái le. Now he says he isn't coming.
B: Zěnmé gāode? How come?
A: Tā bù shǐfù. He isn't feeling well.

Nǐ zěnmé gāode?!!

{ What's with you? OR
What's the matter with you? OR
What the heck are you doing?

mǎnyǐ: "to be pleased," "to be satisfied" This is often used with the prepositional verb duì, "toward," equivalent to English "pleased with":

Hěn duì rén duì Dāngde yǐxiē zhèngcè bù mǎnyǐ. Many people are dissatisfied with some of the Party's policies.

Wǒde huífá, nǐ mǎnyǐ ma? Are you satisfied with my answer?

Tā duì nǐ zhènme hǎo, nǐ wèi- shénme hái bù mǎnyǐ? He's so good to you; why are you still dissatisfied?

Yíge mǎnyǐde huífá is an idiom for "a satisfactory answer."

Wǒ xīwàng nénɡ gěi nǐ yíge mǎnyǐde huífá. I hope I can give you a satisfactory answer.
Unit 1, Review Dialogue

Professor James Armstrong (B) (Amūstēlēŋ Jiàoshōu), the leader of an American tour group visiting China, is talking in his room at the Bēijīng Hotel with Chén Guōqiāng (A) of the China Travel Service (Zhōngguó Lūxíngshè). Later they are joined by Beth Troiano (C) (Bēisi Tēluōānnuò), an American linguist.

A:  Āmūstēlēŋ Jiàoshōu, nǐn hǎo, xiūxíde zěnmeyāng? Hái lèi bu le?  Hello, Professor Armstrong. How was your rest? Are you still tired?

B:  Hái hǎo, bù tài lèi le, shūle yīge zhōngtōu, hǎoduō le. Nǐ zuǒ, nǐ zuǒ. Bù yào kēqi. Duī le, wǒ hái wāngle wèn nǐ, Chén Xiānshēng, wǒ zēnme chéngghu nǐ hǎo ne?  Pretty good. I'm not too tired anymore. I slept for an hour and I feel a lot better. Sit down, sit down. Make yourself at home. Oh, yes, I keep forgetting to ask you, Mr. Chén, what shall I call you?

A:  Nǐn jiù jiào wǒ Chén Guōqiāng hǎo le. Zài zōulāng gōngzuòde Lǎo Wǎng zhídào wǒ. Nǐn yǒu shí, jiù jiào tả zhāo Xiǎo Chén, tả jiù zhídào le.  Just call me Chén Guōqiāng. Lǎo Wǎng who works in the corridor knows me. If you have any problems, just tell him to get Xiǎo Chén. He'll know who.

B:  Haha, Lǎo Wǎng, Xiǎo Chén, yǒu yī tài. Duī le, nǐ lái, yǒu shènmé shì ma?  Haha, Lǎo Wǎng, Xiǎo Chén, that's interesting. Well: Is there some particular reason you came?

A:  Shì zhēiyàngrè. Wǒ lái zhāo nǐ, shì xiāng zài hé nǐ tān yǐxià nǐ-méng de Lūxíng jīihuā.  It's like this. I've come to see you to discuss your travel plans some more with you.

B:  Wōmen zài Nǐō Yuēde shìhou, zhèige jīhū yǐjīng chābùdū ānpái-hǎo le, shí Lūxíngshè ānpáide.  When we were in New York, the plans were already almost all arranged. It was the (China) Travel Service that arranged them.

A:  Zújīn Lūxíngdé rèn xiāngdǎng duō, wōmen zúi hǎo zài tán-yī-tán.  There have been quite a few tourists lately. It would be best to discuss [this] some more.

B:  Dāngrán, dāngrán. Búguò, nǐ zhídào Bēisi ba?  Of course, of course. But, you know Beth, don't you?


B:  Yǒudiǎnr bù cuò, zhèng shì shì tā! Tā bǐjīào líkōjí wōmen zhèi ěrshì-ge rèn zuī yīxiàng cángguǎndé dīfāng shì shènmé. Wōmen qǐng tā lǎi tán-tān, hǎo bu hǎo?  Absolutely right, that's her! She understands more about what places our group of twenty people most want to visit. Let's ask her to come and discuss this, okay?
TVL, Unit 1

A:  哈喽，你想去问她吗？

B:  不吧。我们得打电话。

(Professor Armstrong telephones Beth Troiano, then Chen and Armstrong continue to talk while waiting for her.)

A:  你觉得北京饭店怎么样？我还可以住进去吗？

B:  是的，是的。我穿着的时候，就感觉到空气不好。

A:  哈哈...

(There is a knock at the door, then Miss Troiano enters.)

C:  我来了。这是...

A:  覃国强。中国旅行服务。

C:  好的。我们 Bethesda。

A:  欢迎你来中国。我听说你在语言学方面的工作。

C:  是的。

A:  意见，意见。你好，意见我们来谈谈旅行计划。这里会安排整件事。

B:  好的，好的。

C:  女生，好。我发现我们来时，找到了北京有名的饭店。今天晚上我们去安排一切。

The majority of our group of 25 who came this time are scholars and professors. In New York, we have already been in contact with the Chinese. We are very much interested in the Chinese industrial
xingqu.

A: Nimen zheici zhidao shi zai Shangha, Bijing zheixi difang canguan, fangwen, shi bu shi?

C: Du le. Hai you, women you hen duoc ren, du zhiangguode dengbei diqiu feichang you xingqu, tebie shi Dqing zhiyue shiyou cheng. Bu zhidao wemen shi bu shi keyi qu canguan....?

A: Qu Dqing dagai meiyu shenme wenti.

B: Wemen hai yao qu neiixi you mingde difang, xiang Suzhou, Hangzhou, Huangshan, Guilin, shenme. Zheixi difang he Zhiangguo liishi, wenhu, you hen dade guanxi. Dao Zhiangguo hai, zhiexi difang bu neng bu qu.

A: Danran, danran. Zheixi dou you yijing chabuduo anpailiao le.

B: Nai hao.

C: WO keyi bu keyi dao Zhiangguo Xibei qu yixia?

A: O! Qu Xibei... zhe you yidian wenti.

C: Zemme ne? Shi bu shi yinwei shijian bu gou a?

A: Du, shijian bu gou. WO xiang, nimen zai Zhiangguo jiuj you sige xingqu, Hubei, Dongbei, Huangnan, Xinjiang, bu shijian chabuduo quan zhanwen le. Xiangi hai Zhiangguo zai qu Xibei ba. Min kan hao bu hao?

C: Duibaiyi, wo gaoj shi yuyuanxu! Neimeng, Xinjiang yidai wo zhen xiang q.

B: Teyanjiude zhuyao jiushi Zhiangguo shixiong minzu yuyan.
TVL, Unit 1

A:  Hái! Zhēn duì, wǒ hái yǐwéi nǐn guó de shì pǔtōnghuà ne! 

C:  Mái guǎnxí, méi guǎnxí. Búguò yǒu jīhui wǒ hái shì xiǎng qù Xiěběi kānkàn.

A:  Duǐ le, Yúnnán, Guízhōu, Guǎngxī yìdáí yě yǒu hěn duō shǎoshù mínzú. Nǐ qù Guīlǐn de shíhou jíyì zuò diǎnr yánjiū le!

C:  Òu! Nánfāng gèn běifāngde yǔyán bù yìyàng. Yáoshì yǒu bānfǎ hái shì bāng wǒ ānpái yīxiān ba.

A:  Tsk... Zhè shì yǒu yìdiǎnr màifān, dēng wǒ hē lǐngdào yánjiū yīxià zāi shuō ba.

B:  Ò, nǐ zài xiāngxiāng, rúguǒ kēyì ānpái, nà duì Bèijīng shì hěn dà dé bāngzhù.

C:  Duǐ le. Nǐn shǐshǐ kǎn.


B:  Ng, nà wōmen hái shì yīqi péng yǒng Shānhǎi lǐfāng. 


C:  Zài wōmen de lǐnxíngtuānli, wǒ hái yǒu yīge pénghuo. Wǒ yě děi
hé tāmen tántán, xiǎngxiǎng zěnmeyàng hǎo.


B: Hǎode. Wǒmen wānfàn yǐhòu zài tán yǐcǐ. Wǒ xiǎng zěnmeyàng, Bēisī? Láidejǐ ba?

C: Wǒ xiǎng kěyì. Nàme, jí máfan nǐ le.


C: Xièxie nǐ. Hui tōu jiǎn!

over with them too, and see what is best.

Let's both look into it before making arrangements. But we should be quick about it.

Fine. Let's talk it over again after dinner. What do you think, Beth? Does that give you enough time?

I think so. Well then, we'll trouble you (to take care of this).

It's nothing. I hope it can be arranged suitably. See you later.

Thank you. See you later!
TVL, Unit 1

Unit 1, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American tourist discusses hotel reservations with the desk clerk at the Beijing Hotel.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

kěnénɡ to be possible
kōnɡchúlai to become vacant
tiáozi a brief, informal note

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What problem is the tourist discussing with the desk clerk?

2. How does the desk clerk discover the change in plans?

3. Describe what actions took place by filling in the spaces below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hotel personnel</th>
<th>American tourist group</th>
<th>Group still occupying rooms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25
After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American walks into the dining room of the Bēijing Hotel in a hurry and calls a waiter.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

- fèn  (counter for portions of food)
- huǒtuǐ sānwénzhī  ham sandwich
- kǒuyīn  accent
- yǔyánxuéjīā  linguist
- tīngdechū  to be able to distinguish by listening
- yǒu míng  to be famous
- gāntiān  another day

Note: The waiter in this dialogue speaks with a slight Shànghǎi accent.

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why is the American in a hurry?
2. Give some examples of words that the waiter pronounces differently.
3. What subject is the American interested in?
4. What are the waiter's interests? Is he interested in linguistics?
5. Can you infer why the waiter cuts the conversation short?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.
Exercise 4

In this conversation, a Washington Post correspondent talks to a worker in front of the Dàhuà Cinema in Bēijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chuǎngkǒu</td>
<td>window (e.g., ticket window)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīzhē</td>
<td>newspaper reporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīnwénpiān</td>
<td>newsreel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Xīnwén Jiānbāo&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;News Summary&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bù</td>
<td>(counter for films)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gūshǐpīnr</td>
<td>feature film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wǔdùjīnghuā</td>
<td>Five Golden Flowers (a film)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dàliy</td>
<td>(a city in Yūnnán province)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīqíng gǔshì</td>
<td>love story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yān diānyīng</td>
<td>to show a movie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piānzǐ</td>
<td>film, movie</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions for Exercise 4

1. How long has the reporter been in Bēijīng?

2. What things does the reporter like about Bēijīng?

3. What movies and newsreels has he seen? Which one does the worker recommend?

4. From the newsreel the reporter describes, what can you gather about how Chinese "newsreels" differ in content from American ones?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American tourist (A) talks with the front desk clerk (B) at the Beijing Hotel.

A: Ai, duibuqi, loushanging fangjian bu gou li.

B: Bu gou le? Zemme kanneng ne? Womei jinpaide hachaoerde.

A: Shi zhende, womei shige canquan tuan yigong ershisan ge ren, zimei ganguai shou womei quanbu dou zu shi zai qilou, yigong you shige fangjian, du bu du ni?

B: Duibuqi, qing man yidian shuo, wo bu jide le. Dangyideng, wo lai kankan! O, zai zhier! Wime shi yige Minguode xingtuan shi bu shi?

A: Shi a!

B: Ershisan ge ren, yigong kai shigge fangjian, quan zai qilou. Du du a! Mei cuo a!

A: Bu du ni! Jiu you shierge kong fangjian, you lingge fangjian hai you ren ne!

B: Hai you ren? Zemme hu ne? Wo hai yiwei tamen jintian zhechen yijing cong Shenzhen lijing le ne! Zemme dao xianzai hai zhanzhe wuzi ne?

A: Bu zhidao, min sui hao xiangxiang bide banzi, kankan hai you meiyou kong fangzi.

B: Bide kong fangzi shi yiding meiyu you a! Wo xian liacizi yiwa zhei lingge fangzi weishenme dao xianzai hai meiyou kongchula! O! Zheer you yiwa taci, shou tamen gai zai xiaowu sanqian zhehe likaizi Beijing. Haojie! Mei wenli le.

Say, excuse me, there aren't enough rooms for us upstairs.

There aren't enough? How is that possible? We made all the arrangements.

It's true. In all there are twenty-three people in our tour group. You just said that we're all staying on the seventh floor, in fourteen rooms altogether, right?

I'm sorry, could you say that more slowly? I don't remember. Wait a minute, let me have a look. Oh, here it is. You are an American tour group, aren't you?

That's right!

Twenty-three people taking fourteen rooms altogether, all on the seventh floor. That's right! There's no mistake!

No! There are only twelve free rooms. Two of the rooms still have people in them!

Still have people in them? How could that be? I thought they had left the country this morning by way of Shenzhen! Why are they still occupying the rooms?

I don't know. You'd better think of some other solution, and see if there are any other rooms free.

I'm positive there aren't any other free rooms. First let me try and find out why those two rooms haven't been vacated yet. Oh! There's a note here saying that their plans have been changed and that they're leaving Beijing at three this afternoon. Great! No more problem.
TVL, Unit 1

A: Xiānzài cāi liǎngdiǎn zhōng, wǒmen hái děi dāng duō jiǔ?
B: Liǎngdiǎn tāmen jiù děi liè kāfēi fāngjiān, dào ōu jīchāng děi yǒng sǐshìfēn zhōng ne! Wǒmen gào yǐxià wéishēng, sǐshìfēn zhōng ba!
A: Nàmèi liǎngdiǎn bèn wǒmen jiù yǒu fāngjiān le.
B: Dùi le. Dào cāngtīng hē běi kāfēi, xiūxi yǐxià, shǐjiān jiù dào le.
B: Hūf tōu jiān.

It's only two o'clock now, how much longer do we have to wait?

They'll have to leave their rooms at two: it takes forty minutes to get to the airport! It will be thirty minutes while we clean the rooms.

So we can have the rooms at two-thirty.

Right. Why don't you go have a cup of coffee in the dining room and rest a bit, and then it will be time.

Okay. Thank you. See you later.

See you later.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American (A) walks into the dining room of the Běijīng Hotel in a hurry and calls a waiter (B).

A: Duībuqǐ, yībēi rè kāfēi, jiù yào nǐmài, bù yào tánɡ, yǐrén huǒtuǐ sānmíngzhǐ. Yūe kuài yuē hǎo!
B: Měitiān dōu shì "yuē kuài yuē hǎo," nǐ zhēn mánɡ a!
A: Wǒ zhǐdào tāmen gǎi wò ǎnpái le nàmèi duō yào fāngwèndé dǐfànɡ. Zhēn shì yītiān yǒu sānshílìɡè zhǒnɡtōu cái hǎo.
B: Hǎo, hǎo. Wǒ mǎshàng jiù lái.

(One minute later, the waiter comes back with the lunch.)

B: Yīdié sānmíngzhǐ, kāfēi, nǐmài.
A: Zhēn kuài. Xièxiè nǐ. Ài, lài le sītiān le, kěshì hǎishì bù zhī dào zěnmé chénghu nǐ, zhēn duībuqǐ.
B: Wǒ jiù jiào wò Xiǎo Líu hǎo le, bǐjīnɡ rónɡyí jí.

Excuse me, a cup of hot coffee, with cream only, no sugar, and a ham sandwich. As fast as possible!

Every day it's "as fast as possible." You're so busy!

You know, they arranged so many places for me to visit. I only wish that there were thirty-six hours in a day.

Okay. I'll be right back.

Your sandwich, coffee, and milk.

That was really fast. Thank you. Gee, I've been here four days and I still don't know how to address you, I'm very sorry.

Just call me Xiǎo Líu. It's the easiest to remember.
A: Xīǎo Lì, tīng ni de kǎo yīn nǐ
gān shì nánfāng rén. Shi Shānghǎi rén, duī bu duì?

B: Nǐ zhēn shì yǔyánxuéjiā, bùdàn
huì shuō zhōngguó huà, hài tīngde-
chū nánfāng, běifāng kǎoyíngde bù
tóng.

A: Náli, náli. Wǒ yānjiúde zhūyào
shì pūtōnghuà, duī fāngyán méiyǒu
shènme yānjiū, zhūyào shì wǒ duì
Zhōngguó fēicháng yǒu xīngqu.
Dōngběi, Xīběi, nánfāng, běifāng,
méiyīge dīfāng, méiyīge dīqū dōu
yǒu zìjǐde yǔyán xīguǎn, zhēn shì
fēicháng yǒu yísi.

B: Nǐ duì Zhōngguó zhèyàng yǒu xīng-
qu, zhècè lǎi fāngyán yǒu méiyǒu
gèn Zhōngguóde yǔyánxuéjiā tāntan?

A: Tān le. Zhècè Zhōngguó fāng-
mian ānpái wǒ gèn hěn duō xuézhě
jiānle miàn. Zhěxiē xuézhě zài
guòwài dōu shì hěn yǒu míngdé.

B: Nà hǎojíle. Nǐ kěyǐ yǒu jīhuì
duō lǐkàojiē yìdān Zhōngguó yǔyán-
xuéde qǐngkuǎng.

A: Nǐ duì yǔyán yǒu xīngqu ma?

B: Wǒ? Wǒ duì wénxué, lǐshǐ dōu
yǒu yìdān xīngqu. Nǐ máng, wǒmen
xiǎoyìcì zài tān.

Huí tòu jiān, Xīǎo Lìdù.

B: Zǎijiān.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

In front of Dàhuá Cinema in Běijīng, a worker (B) is cleaning the glass
cases in which posters are displayed. The Washington Post correspondent,
Richard Leblanc (A), walks over to him.

A: Nín hǎo a! Mǎi piào de chuāngkǒu
hái méi kāi na?

B: Xīǎo Lì, your accent sounds like
you’re probably a southerner. You’re
from Shānghǎi, right?

B: You’re a real linguist. Not only
can you speak Chinese, you can even
tell the difference between a northern
and a southern accent.

A: Thank you. I mainly do research on
Standard Chinese. I’m not well versed
in the dialects. The main thing is
that I’m very interested in Chinese.
Manchuria, the northwest, the south,
the north, every place, each district,
has its own ways of speech. It’s
really very interesting.

B: Since you have such an interest in
Chinese, did you talk with some
Chinese linguists during this visit?

A: Yes. On this trip, the Chinese
arranged for me to meet with a lot
of scholars who are very famous
abroad.

B: That’s great. You get the chance
to find out more about linguistics
in China.

A: Are you interested in language?

B: Me? I have some interest in lit-
erature and history. You’re busy,
we’ll talk some other time.

A: Okay. We’ll chat some other day.
See you later, Xīǎo Lìdù.

B: Good-bye.
B: Měi na! Zài guǒ shì fēn zhōng, jīn wǒ jí jū kāi le. Mǐn cóng nàr lái ya? Pǔtōnghuà shuōde zhème hǎo?

A: Wǒ shì Huáshèngdūn Yóubāo de lá bèi, zài Béijīng yǐ jīng sāng yuè le.

B: Zài Béijīng chǐde, zhūde dōu mǎnyǐ ma?

A: Chǐde, zhūde dōu mǎnyǐ, wǒ tèbié xǐhuān Béijīngde xiāochī.

B: Duì! Béijīngde xiāochī shì yǒu mìngde, Dōngdān yǐdáide xiāochī-diàn nǐ dōu qūguō le ba?

A: Dàbùfen dōu qūguō le. Zhēn bù cuò, qíle hǎi xiǎng qú.

B: Shì a, shì a! Mǐn jǐntiān xiǎng kàn shénme diànyīngr a?


B: Mǐn dōu kāngguǒ shēnmé le?


B: Mǐn zuǐ xǐhuān nàr a?

A: Wǒ zuǐ xǐhuān Huángshān hé Gǔlín.

B: Ó! Měi shì hǎo diànhǎng!

A: Wǒ hǎi kāngguǒ yǐbù jījiāo shāo-shāo mǐnzhú shēnghuóde diànyīng.

B: Shì gūshìpíānr a, háishi xīnwénpíānr a?

A: Xīnwénpíānr, shì guānyuè Xīnjiāng, Něiměng nèi yǐdáide.
TVL, Unit 1

B: 有个故事片叫《五朵金花》，是大理白族自治州民族的《情歌》，你看过吗?

A: 没看过。大理在哪儿?

B: 不，在云南，那儿地方好。

A: 今天上映了? 电影是哪家的?

B: 是不是，那边白族油菜地里的《新闻联播》里已经播了。

A: 哦，我还要看。再说一遍。

B: 好，再快点吗? 你快去吧。

A: 好，谢谢。再见。

B: 再见！

There's a feature film called *Five Golden Flowers*, a love story about a national minority in Dàlì. Have you seen it?

No. Where's Dàlì? In Guīzhōu?

No, in Yùnnán. It's a gorgeous place.

Is that movie playing today?

Not today, but next week. If you want to see it, give us a call and get in touch, and we can save a ticket for you.

Thanks a lot. Say, is this ad about Dàqìng?

Yes. They produce oil there. It's in today's "News Summary."

Oh, I want to see that film.

Okay, the ticket office is open now. Go and buy your ticket.

Right. Thank you. Good-bye.

Good-bye.

32
Unit 2, Reference List

1. A: Wòmen zhèngfǔ rènyuè de mùqián
dà-, zhōng-, xīkòoxué
guǎngzhōng zěmmèiyáng?

B: Wòmen xiǎng fǎncái Shèngfēng
yǐhòu de jiāoyú shuǐpíng bù
gòu gēo, wòmen dèi gǎibiǎn
zhěge qíngxíng.

What does your government think of your colleges, high schools, and primary schools at present?

We think that since the Cultural Revolution educational standards have not been high enough, and we must change this situation.

2. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ yǒu jīhuade
tiǎoqì yǐbùrén dàxuè de
shuǐpíng.

B: À! Zhèi jīlù shì běi dàxué
fēnchènghèng yǐlèi dàxué èrlèi
dàxué de yuǎnyīn le!

The Chinese government is raising the standards in some universities in a planned way.

Ah! This is the reason that universities are divided into Class I and Class II.

3. A: Xiānzhài Shāngkǎi de jiāoshī
dǎnlíng gòu bu gòu?

B: Bú gòu, qùi, zhěi shì yīge pǔtònde wéntí.

At present is the number of teachers in Shāngkǎi sufficient?

No, moreover this is a widespread problem.

4. A: Bāoshāng shuō Wèiguó zhōng-
xīkòoxué de tiǎoqián dōu bù
cuò.

B: Shì. Jīběnshāng měi sānshí-
ge xuéshèng yǒu yǐwèi jiāoshī,
lián zuì pǔtōngde xuéxiào yě
yǒu diǎnshí, tūshūguán,
shènméde.

It says in the papers that conditions in American secondary and primary schools are quite good.

Yes. In general there's a teacher for every thirty students, and even the most ordinary schools have televisions, a library, and so on.

5. A: Zhèngfǔ gěi pǔtōng xīkòoxué
hé zhōngdiǎn xīkòoxué
guǎn yǐyīng duō ma?

B: Yǒu yǒu diǎn chàbié. Wòmen
dèi shùxuàn zhāogōu
zhōngdiǎn xīkòoxué.

Does the government give the same amount of money to ordinary elementary schools as to key elementary schools?

There is some difference. We must first give consideration to key elementary schools.

6. A: Zhōngguó lǐxuéshèng xuéxíde
zhōngdiǎn shì zìrán kěxué
ba?

B: Duìle, shì kěxué jīhuì.

Chinese students abroad concentrate on the natural sciences, isn't that so?

Right, on science and technology.
7. A: Nièmēnde yànjiūshēng chū guó xué xī yǐhòu dōu huì dà xué jiào shū ma?
B: Bù ěr. Yǒu yībù fēn dì dìānrèn jīsì fāngmiàn de lǐngdǎo gōngzuò.
A: Jīngguó sān nián de nǚ, zhè ge dù duō nóng yě shēng chǎn tǐ duō jiāng dāng bù cuò le?
B: Guānyuè zhè ge wèntí, nǐmen yǒu méi yǒu cáilǐào, wǒmen kě bù kěyì dǎihulí qu kànkan?
A: Yào shìxiàn sī ge xiān dāi huà zuì dà de wèntí shì shénme?
B: Shì jīngjì. Wǒmen dì zài bǔ tài chāng de shì jì nǐ bā zhēng gē guó jì de jīng jì gāo shāng qū.
A: Wǒmen de liú xué shēng tí chū lái jī ge wèntí.
B: Wǒ tīng chū le, tāmen xiāng jǐ kuài huǐ xué sù. Wǒmen yī diǎn qǐ láo lǐ.

8-14.zhǐliàng (zhǐliàng, zhǐliàng)
Běijīng dà xué (short for Běijīng Dāxué)
difference, distinction
social sciences

After going abroad to study, do all your graduate students go back to the universities and teach?
No. Some of them have to take up leading posts in technical fields.
After three years of effort, conditions for agricultural production in this area are now quite good.
Do you have any data on this subject that we could take back with us to read?
What is the biggest problem in achieving the Four Modernizations?
It's the economy. Before too long we must push ahead the economy of the whole country.
Our foreign exchange students have brought up a few problems.
I heard. They want to speed up the pace of their studies. We'll be sure to consider it.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Běidà</td>
<td>Beijing University part, section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-būfen</td>
<td>material(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cāiliào</td>
<td>difference, disparity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chābié</td>
<td>to leave one's country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chū guó</td>
<td>to take on, to assume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎnrèn</td>
<td>to divide (into)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēn</td>
<td>revolution; to revolt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gémìng</td>
<td>to speed up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiākùài</td>
<td>teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiāoshī</td>
<td>basically, on the whole, by and large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jībènshàng</td>
<td>to go through, to experience technology; technical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐngguǐ</td>
<td>science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jìhu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēxué</td>
<td>category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lèi</td>
<td>study-abroad students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐxuéshēng</td>
<td>at present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mǔqián</td>
<td>to make great efforts, to try hard to exert oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǚlì</td>
<td>universal, widespread, common regular, ordinary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǔbiān</td>
<td>difference, distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǔtōng</td>
<td>to think, to consider, to hold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qūbié</td>
<td>social sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rénwéi</td>
<td>to realize first level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shèhuì kēxué</td>
<td>number, amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shíxiàn</td>
<td>the Four Modernizations speed, pace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǒuxiǎn</td>
<td>condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shùxué</td>
<td>to bring up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shùpíng</td>
<td>to raise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shùliǎng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
yánjìshēng
graduate student
yībùfēn
a part, a portion; some
zhěnggè(r)
whole, entire
zhǐliàng (zhǐ-, zhǐ-)
quality
zhòngdiǎn
focal point, emphasis; key
zìrán
nature; natural
zìrán kēxué
natural sciences
Unit 2: Reference Notes

1. A: Mǐnzuò zhènghuá rènwéi mǎxiàn
dá-, zhōng-, xiǎoxuéde
qíngkuàng zěnmeyàng?
What does your government think of
your colleges, high schools, and
primary schools at present?

B: Wǒmen xiǎng Wénhuà Gémíng
yìzhùde jiàoju shuǐpíng bù
gòu gāo, wǒmen déi gǎibiàn
zhège qíngxíng.
We think that since the Cultural
Revolution educational standards
have not been high enough, and
we must change this situation.

Notes on No. 1

rènwéi: "to think (that)," "to consider (that)," "to believe (that)"
This is typically used for considered opinions and judgments, as opposed to
xiǎng, "to think," which can be used for mere impressions and guesses. Also
contrast yìyí, "to think mistakenly."

Wǒ rènwéi tā shuōde shì duìde.
I consider what he said correct OR
I believe that what he said is right.

Tā rènwéi zhèjiàn shì bù yìng-
gāi ràng wǒmen zuò.
He does not think we should be allowed
to do this.

mǎxiàn: "the present" or "at present" Although both mǎxiàn and xiān-
zài, "now," refer to the present, xiānzài may mean "right now," whereas
mǎxiàn must refer to a broader period of time.

Mǎxiàn wǒmen chǎngde shèngchān
shuǐpíng hái bù gòu gāo.
At present our factory's production
level isn't high enough.

Mǎxiàn tāde jīngjī qíngkuàng bù
tài hǎo.
At present his financial situation
isn't too great.

dá-, zhōng-, xiǎoxué: Short for dáxué, zhōngxué, xiǎoxué.

gémíng: "revolution," "revolutionary," "to revolt" In ancient China,
gé mín, literally, "to change the mandate of heaven," referred to the changing
of dynasties, since the monarch was held to be ordained by heaven. The pattern
Gé X-de mín, literally, "to change X's mandate of heaven," means "to revolt
against X."

Wénhuà Gémíng or Wénhuà Dà Gémíng: The common terms for the Wūchān
An even shorter abbreviation is Wěngé.

shuǐpíng: "level," "standard"

Rìběndé gōngyè shèngchān
shuǐpíng zhēn gāo!
Japan's industrial production
level is really high!

Mǎiguó rěndé shènghuó shuǐpíng
hěn gāo!
Americans have a very high standard
of living!

37
Tài Đài: shuǐping bù gòu gāo.

HIS level in German isn't high enough.

2. A: Zhōngguό zhēngrú yǒu jīhuade
tīgǎo yǐbùfēn dàxué
duì shuǐping.

The Chinese government is raising the
standards in some universities in a
planned way.

B: ě! Zhèi jiǔ shì bā dàxué
fēnzhòng yǐliè dàxué èrlèi
duìshuǐping yuǎnyīn le!

Ah! This is the reason that uni-
versities are divided into Class
I and Class II.

Notes on No. 2

tīgǎo: "to raise," "to improve"

Dào Zhōngguó qù, kěyǐ tīgǎo dui
Zhōngguό duì shuǐping.

By going to China, you can increase
your understanding of China.

Jiěfàng yǐshòu, fùné de duíwěi
tīgǎo le.

Since liberation, the status of
women has improved.

Shēnhuáng míngqiǎo pǔtōnghuá
shuǐping tīgǎole bù shǎo.

The level of the minority nationalities
in Standard Chinese has improved
quite a bit.

-bùfēn: "part," "section"

Qǐng bā zhè yǐbùfēn fēnzhòng
Zhōngguό.

Please translate this part into
Chinese.

Tā xīde nèibèn shū, yǒude bùfēn
hǎo, yǒude bùfēn bù hǎo.

Some sections of the book he wrote
are good, and some aren't.

yǐbùfēn: "a part," "a portion," "some"

Tā shuǐde huà, yǐbùfēn shì duìfēi,
yǐbùfēn shì cuòde.

Part of what he said is right, and
part is wrong.

Qùde rén, yǒu yǐbùfēn bì xǐǎng
zhī qù, yǒu yǐbùfēn bù xǐǎng
zhī qù.

Of the people who went, some would
like to go back again, and some
do not want to.

fēn: "to divide" As you learned fēnkuǎi, "to split up," in the Society
module, this word is not entirely new to you, but here you see it with the
ending -chéng, "into." Here's another example:

Wǒ bā píngguǒ fēnzhòng sīkuǎi, wǒmen yìrén yìkuǎi.

I'll divide the apple into four
pieces, one piece for each of us.

-lèi: "category"

Xiàngzài lǐ Měiguó Zhōngguό
réndàgài kěyǐ fèn liǎnglèi.

The Chinese who are coming to the
U.S. now can be roughly divided
into two categories.
zhèli lài wèntí zài háo bǐ lǐxíng-
shède rán tān.

"Hái Wūlèi," "Hóng Wūlèi,\" shì
Wēnhuā Dà Gémbìng shìhuáde
shuōfā.

The "Five Black Categories" and the
"Five Red Categories" were terms
used during the time of the
Cultural Revolution.

zhè jìù shì...-de yuán yīn: "This is the reason that..." Here is
another example of this useful pattern:

zhè jìù shì tài méi qù de yuán yīn. This is the reason he didn't go.

zhè jìù shì...-de yuán yīn le: This sentence exemplifies a use of new-
situation le to emphasize the speaker's newly-reached understanding. You
can think of this le as meaning "Now I get it!"

bǐ, nǐ yǐqián shuòguó Hòu Xiān-
shēng jiù shì tā le!

Oh, the Mr. Hōu you spoke of before
is him!

yǐ! Suǒyì nǐ nàme xiǎng qu le!

Oh! That's why you want so much
to go!

Related uses of new-situation le include drawing a new inference, e.g.,

nǐ, nǐ yǐdīng rènshì Chén
Kēzhǎng le?

Then, you must know Section Chief
Chēn, I suppose?

and settling on a course of action or reaching a decision:

A: Tā zhīdào wǒde diànhuà mǎ?
B: Zhīdào.
A: Nǐ wǒ jìù dēng tāde diànhuà
le.

Does he know my telephone number?
Yes.
Then I'll wait for his call.

3. A: Xiānshì Shànghǎi de jiāoshī
shèliàng gōu bu gōu?
B: Bù gōu, qíqi, zhè shì yīge pūbiānde wèntí.

At present is the number of teachers
in Shànghǎi sufficient?
No, moreover this is a widespread
problem.

Notes on No. 3

jiāo shī: "teacher," "schoolteacher"

wǒ shì yīge xiàoxué jiāo shī. I'm an elementary school teacher.

"These terms, which arose in the first years of the Cultural Revolution (and are now obsolete),
referred to the two ideologically "irreconcilable camps." In effect, they were used to classify
people by their family backgrounds. The Five Black Categories, or "bad" backgrounds, were land-
lords, rich peasants, counterrevolutionaries, bad elements, and bourgeois rightists. The Five Red
("good") Categories were workers, poor peasants, lower-middle peasants, revolutionary armymen, and
revolutionary cadres.
Nimen xuéxiào yígōng yǒu duōshǎo língwén jíshì?

How many English teachers are there in your school?

shūliàng: "quantity," "number," "amount"

Nǐ néng bù néng shuōchū tāmende shūliàng yǒu duōshǎo?

Can you give an exact idea of their numbers?

Cōng shūliàngshàng kàn, zhèige xuéxiào de nánshēng zhǎn zhōuyuède diwěi.

From the point of view of numbers, the male students occupy the main position in the school.

pūbiàn: "to be universal/widespread/common"

Zài Měiguó, yīge jiàotíng yǒu sānliàng qīchē shì hěn pūbiànde shì.

In America it is very common for one family to have three cars.

Zài Zhōngguó, zújīn sānshínián, tāmende wēnhuà jiàoyù shūpíng pūbiàn tígāole.

During the last thirty years, people's educational level in China has seen widespread improvement.


It says in the papers that conditions in American secondary and primary schools are quite good.

B: Shì. Jīběishāng měi sānshíge xuéshēng yǒu yīwěi jiàoshī, lián zú pǔtōngde xuéxiào yě yǒu diànshí, tīshū, guǎn shēnmede.

Yes. In general there's a teacher for every thirty students, and even the most ordinary schools have televisions, a library, and so on.

Notes on No. 4

tíaojiān: "condition(s)," "circumstances"

Zhèrde gōngzuò tíaojiān bù cuò.

Working conditions here are pretty good.

Xīběi de shēnghuó tíaojiān bù zěmà hǎo.

Living conditions are not so good in the Northwest.

Zài měi diào tíaojiān wǎn, wǒmen méiyǒu bānfǎ zài kuǎi.

Under the present circumstances, we are unable to go any faster.

Hě tāmén xuě shēngyì zhēn bù róngyì, tāmén zōngshì yào jiāng hěn duō tíaojiān.

It's really hard to do business with them. They are always insisting on a lot of conditions.

Tāmén rěnwéi tā méiyǒu tíaojiān xuě zhèige gōngzuò.

They don't think he's competent to do this job.

jíběn: "basic," "fundamental," "elementary" (For the first example, you need to know yǔkǎ, "grammar," and cíhùi, "vocabulary.")
TVL, Unit 2

学 一年 中文， 日本

diě hě cān diū zhīdào le.

The basic conditions for farming

都 不够好 in this area.

Jamesheng, "basically," is often used in the PRC to mean "in the main," "on

the whole," "by and large." (This usage is not common in Taiwan, however.)

Dben

tiǎojíàn bù gōu.

On the whole, he is a good comrade.

Dben

méiyòu wèntí le.

By and large, there are no more

problens.

NY shuòde yīngwén jìben

wǒ dōu tòngdēnng.

For the most part, I can understand

all your English.

måi...yǒu...: "There is...for every..." Examples:

Däi shì yī ge hǎo

tóngzhī.

There is an American for every

three persons. (One of every

three people is an American.)

Måi sān tī yǒu yī ge shí
 Méiguó rén.

(There is) one person (who) comes
every three days.

Pǔtǒng: "to be ordinary/common/regualr"

Tāmen liǎngge zhī shì pǔtǒng

péngyou, méi shěnmé tābié de
guānxi.

The two of them are just ordinary

friends; they don't have any

special relationship.

Tà jiù shì yī ge pǔtǒng rén, hé

nǐ hě wǒ yìyāng.

He is just an ordinary person, like

you or me.

Pǔtǒng de hùzhào hé zhèiège yǒu

shēnmé qūbié?

What's the difference between an

ordinary passport and this?

5. A: Zhèngzhǔn gěi pǔtǒng xiǎoxué

běi zhòngdiǎn xiǎoxué de

qián yìyāng duō ma?

Does the government give the same

amount of money to ordinary elemen-
tary schools as to key elementary

schools?

B: Yǒu yídān chābié. Wǒmen
děi shǒuliǎn zhǎogu

zhòngdiǎn xiǎoxué.

There is some difference. We must

first give consideration to key

elementary schools.

Notes on No. 5

zhòngdiǎn: "heavy-point"—"emphasis," "focal point" or in some phrases,

"key" Also used adverbially.
MY yánjiūde zhòngdiǎn dōu yǒu
néixī fǎngxiàn?

Nǐmen yào cángguǎnzhòngdiǎn
shì néiránkǎnhǎi?

Nǐmen yào zhòngdiǎn fǎzhǎndé
diqu yǒu jīge?

Wǒmen yǐnggài bǎ zhòngdiǎn fāng
zài jiāoyùshēng.

Tāmende gōngzuò zhòngdiǎn shì
gāo wénhuà jiāoyu.

What are the focal points of your research?

What is to be the focus of your visit?

How many regions do you intend to focus on developing?

We should put the emphasis on education.

The focus of their work is on culture and education.

chàbié: "difference," "discrepancy," "disparity." Contrast the word qūbié (additional required vocabulary), "difference," "distinction." Chàbié stresses the idea of a distance, gap, or inequality between the things compared. Qūbié refers to differences, determined by inspection, between otherwise similar things.

Zhèiyàng zuò hé nèiyáng zuò yǒu
shēnmé chàbié?

Chéngshì hé nóngcūn chàbié hěn
dà.

Nǐ shuōshuō zěi liàngge shāo-
yīnjiè qūbié zài nàr?

Zhèi liàngběn zhīdiǎn yǒu shēnmé
qūbié?

What is the difference between doing it this way and doing it that way?

There's a big difference between the city and the country.

Tell me what the differences are between these two radios.

What's the difference between these two dictionaries?

shǒuxiān: "first," meaning before doing something else. This is a movable adverb (can come either before or after the subject of the sentence, but always before the verb).

Rúguǒ nǐ yào dào Zhōngguó qù,
shǒuxiān yào xué yīdiǎn Zhōngwén. shòu should learn a little Chinese first.

Shǒuxiān bā yǎo mǎi de dōngxi kāi
yīzhuàng dàmi, ránhòu zài qīng
tā qù mǎi.

First make a list of the things you want bought, and then ask him to go buy them.

Shǒuxiān can also mean "first of all," "in the first place":

Shǒuxiān wǒmen yào tāntān yīdiā
cángguǎn fāngwén jíhuā.

First of all we should discuss your sightseeing plans.

In sentence 58, shǒuxiān zhǎogu, "first of all give consideration to," can be idiomatically translated as "give first consideration to."
6. A: Zhōngguó liúxuéshēng xuǎnxué zhōngdiàn shì zǐrán kěxué ba? Chinese students abroad concentrate on the natural sciences, isn't that so?

B: Duìle, shì kěxué jíshù. Right, on science and technology.

Notes on No. 6

zǐrán: "natural," "naturally" of the physical world.

Tā hěn xǐhuān dàzǐrán. He is very fond of nature.

Ruìshì de zǐrán huánjìng hěn tèbié. Switzerland’s natural environment is very different.

Zhèige shǎoshù mínzú dìqūde zǐrán tíwòjiān bù hǎo. The natural conditions in this minority nationality region are poor.

Tāde yǎngzi hěn zǐrán. Her appearance is very natural.

Nièr lǐkāi jiā, rùmǔ nánguō shì zǐrán de. When a daughter leaves home, it is natural for her parents to be sad.

Xuéle bù yōng, zǐrán huì wàng. If you don’t use something after you learn it, you’re bound to forget it.

Bù yòng guān, zǐrán huì guòqude. Don’t worry about it; it will pass by itself.

kěxué: "science" Kěxuéjī is a "scientist."

Mēiguó shì ge kěxué jīnbiāo de guójiā. The U.S. is a scientifically advanced country.

Nóngcūn rén cōngqián méiyǒu shénme kěxué zhīshì. In the past, people in rural areas did not have any knowledge of science.

Kěxué is also used for "to be scientific":

Zhèzhīzhòng sūdǐ hěn kěxué. This method is very scientific.

Nǐ něizhòng xiǎngfǎ bù kěxué! That’s a very unscientific idea.

jíshù: "technique," "skill," "technology"

Tā kěi chèdē jíshù hěn bāo. He’s a good driver.

Zhè shì wǒ zuòdě Mǎpō Dōufu, nǐ kān wǒde jíshù zǎnmeyàng? I made this Mǎpō Beancurd. How do rate my technique?
China's tea production technology is rather highly developed.

He is a skilled worker.

After going abroad to study, do all your graduate students go back to the universities and teach?

No. Some of them have to take up leading posts in technical fields.

Notes on No. 7

chū guó: "to go abroad"

Tā shì nǎinián chū guó de?

In what year did he go abroad?

Chū guó lǐxué de yànjiūshēng nǚde duō bu duō?

Are there many women among the graduate students who go abroad to study?

dànrèn: "to assume," "to take up" a job or post

Nǐ zài zhèr dànrèn shénme gōngzuò?

What is your job title here?

Tā zuìjìn yào qù ōuzhōu dànrèn lǐngzhì gōngzuò.

He will soon be going to Europe to do consular work.

Tā dànrènguò Měidàshì sīzhǎng.

He has been the chief of the Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.

Dànrèn lǐngzhī gōngzuò, as in sentence 7A, is an often used phrase for "to take on leadership work," "to take up a leading post" (that is, to be in a job in which one is in charge of others).

After three years of effort, conditions for agricultural production in this area are now quite good.

Do you have any data on this subject that we could take back with us to read?

Notes on No. 8

jǐngguò: (1) "to pass," "to go through"
Zhèi lì chē jīngguó Dàngdàn ma? Does this bus go through Dàngdàn?

Nǐ gěi dìfang wǒ mài qiúguò, dānshì jīngguó. I've never been there, but I've passed through (OR passed by).

Zhèi shí wǒ diyīcì jīngguó zhèiyáng de kāoshì. This is the first time I've ever taken a test like this.

(2) "as a result of," "after," "through" This is the way jīngguó is used in sentence 8A. (For the second example you need to know zhǎnzhēng, "war.")

Jīngguó tài lùn, wǒmen juédìng xià xǐngqǐ le qù yīcǎn. After discussion, we have decided to hold the picnic next Thursday.

Tā yě bù jīngguó kāolǎ jiù hé tā jiān bān le. He married her without even giving it any consideration.

Jīngguó běn zhǎng shǐjíandé zhuázhǎng, zhèi gè qū yǐjīng bìān le bù rènshì le. As a result of the lengthy war, this area has become unrecognizable.

(3) "course (of events); what has happened"

Tā huí lái bā quǎnbù jīngguó gāosu le wǒ. When he returned, he told me the whole story of what happened.

Shíqīngdá jīngguó shì zěnme- yǎngde, nǐ zhīdào ma? Do you know how the whole thing went?

nǔlì: "to make great efforts," "to try hard," "to exert oneself"

Tā gōngzuò hěn nǔlì. He works very hard.

Tā bù dàn nǔlì gōngzuò, rèn yě hěn rèxin. Not only does he work very hard, but he is also a warmhearted person.

Contrast nǔlì gōngzuò, "work hard," with wōnggōng, "study hard."

cáiliào: (1) "material"

Zhèi gè fángzi cái liào kāngkǎi hǎoxiǎng bù cuò. This house looks like it's made of pretty good material.

(2) "data," "material"

Tā gěi wǒ hěn duō cáiliào, wǒ sāntiān yě kānbū wán. He gave me a lot of data (material). Even three days wouldn't be enough time for me to finish reading it.

Nǐ méndào xīndá xuéxī cáiliào le ma? Míngtiān yào shàng xīn kè le? Have you picked up the new study materials yet? We start the new lesson tomorrow.
TVL, Unit 2

(3) "makings," "material"

Tā bù shì zuǒ jījiāoshūde cǎiliǎo. He doesn't have the makings of a professor.

9. A: Yào shìxiàn Sìge Xiàndǎihuà zúi dàde wèntí shì shénme? What is the biggest problem in achieving the Four Modernizations?

B: Shì jīngjì. Wòmen děi zài bù tāi chángde shìjì ànyí bù zhēnggèr guòjìdié jīngjì gōoshàngqu. It's the economy. Before too long we must push ahead the economy of the whole country.

Notes on No. 9

shìxiàn: "to realize/achieve/bring about/accomplish/come true" Besides being used to talk about the Four Modernizations, shìxiàn is also used for realizing a wish, an ideal, a goal, self-sufficiency, a reform, industrialization, etc. Note that shìxiàn can be used in a causal sense (i.e., "cause to come about"): "They realized their wish" [Tāmen shìxiànle tāmende yuànwàng]; or in a non-causal sense (i.e., "come about"): "Their wish came about" [Tāmende yuànwàng shìxiànle].

Zài Xīfāng, shìxiàn gōngyèhùa yǐjīng shì yǐbǎi nián qiánde shǐ le. In the West, achieving industrialization is something which was done a century ago.

Nánjing jǐběnshāng shìxiànle lúhuà. Nánjing has basically accomplished "greenification" (making the city green by planting trees, flowers, etc.).

xiàndài: "modern times" or "modern," "contemporary"

Xiàndài rén de xiǎngfǎ dōu shì hěn kāxùde. Modern man’s ideas are all scientific.

-huà: "-ize," "-ify" Examples:

gōngyèhuà to industrialize lúhuà to make green (by planting trees, etc.)

jǐnhuà to simplify (jǐn is short for jīnándān) měihuà to beautify

Měiguóhuà to Americanize ēhuà to worsen (ē is a literary word for "bad")

Xiàndàihuà to Westernize

xiàndàihuà: "to become modernized"; "modernized/sophisticated/modern"

Caution: This is an intransitive verb (cannot take an object). Therefore, to say "modernize our country" you must phrase it as "make our country become modernized".
Wǒmen yào shì wǒmen de guójiè xiàndǎihuà.

zhèxiē xiàndǎihuà yǔyán bù shì mǎigè rén dōu zhīde.

Sīgé Xiàndǎihuà: "the Four Modernizations" These are the modernization of agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology. Comprehensive development in these areas by the end of the century was called for at the Eleventh National Party Congress in 1977, and again by Communist Party Chairman Huà Guōfēng at the Fifth National People's Congress in 1978. (This theme had been enunciated twice before, in 1965 and 1975, by Zhōu Ņnlái.) Since 1979, the drive for the "socialist Four Modernizations" has been at the root of the Chinese government's domestic policy and have also had a broad influence on its foreign policy.

zhēngɡē(r): As an adjective (before a noun), "whole," "entire," referring to a single item.

Zhēnɡɡē shāngwǔ nǐ dōu zuò shénme le?

Wǒ yào māi zhēnɡɡē de huǒtūi, bù yào bāngdē.

Zhēnɡɡē jiùhuà dōu shì tā yīge rén xiānɡchúde.

What did you do the whole morning?

I want to buy a whole ham, not a half one.

The entire plan was his idea.

As an adverb, zhēnɡɡē(r) means "completely," "in its entirety":

Zhēijū huáde yīsī nǐ zhēnɡɡē nónɡcuō le.

Tāde mòtūchē zhēnɡɡē bāi zhuānghuāi le.

Zhēiɡē fánɡzi zhēnɡɡē dōu shì mǐtou zhuōde.

You completely misunderstood the meaning of that sentence.

His motorcycle was completely ruined in the collision.

This house is made completely of wood.

gōoshānɡɡōu: Shānɡqù, "to go up," may be used figuratively to say that production "goes up" or work "moves forward." The resultative compound gōoshānɡɡōu, therefore, means "to cause to go up," "to cause to move forward." We have translated it here as "to push ahead" the economy.

10. A: Wǒmen de liúxuānshēnɡ tǐchúlèi jīɡé wèntì.

B: Wǒ tīnɡshà le, tāmén xiǎnɡ jiānzhǔ xuǎnqí shǒu. Wǒmen yídēng kǎnlǐ.

Our foreign exchange students have brought up a few problems.

I heard. They want to speed up the pace of their studies. We'll be sure to consider it.

47
Notes on No. 10

**ti**: One meaning of the verb **ti** is "to lift," "to raise." In a more abstract sense, it can mean (1) "mention," "refer to," "bring up" (a subject). **Tì wèntí** is "to ask questions."

Wǒ ti ge wèntí kěyí ma? May I ask a question?
Qīng dàjiā ti yǐjìan. Please give us your comments, everyone.
Bìe zài ti nèijiàn shì le, hǎo ma? Don't mention that again, okay?
Tā mèi jī tídao zhējìàn shì, wǒ jīu shēngqì. Every time he mentions that, I get angry.

(2) "to raise," "to bring up," "to put forward" (questions, comments, demands, etc.):

Tā tíde nèi liàngge tiāojiān, wǒ méi bān fā shìxiàn. There's no way I can satisfy (fulfill) the conditions he put forward.
Nǐ juéde wǒ de bān fā bù xíng, kěyí tíchū nǐde bān fā. If you don't think my way (of handling it) will do, you can propose a way of your own.
Tā tíchū ràng Zhāng Tóngzhī zuò lǐngdǎo. He proposed having Comrade Zhāng be the leader.
Tā tíchū yào dào Nánjīng qu yītàng yìhòu cái néng xǐ zhējiàn wénzhǎng. He said that he had to go to Nánjīng before he could write this article.

jīkuì: "to quicken," "to speed up" (one's step, a process, the pace of doing something)

Róngguò jīkuì sū, sàntiān jī xīng le. If we speed up, we can finish in three days.

sùdù: (literally "fast-degree") "speed," "pace," "tempo"

Sānshínián lái, Rìběn jīngjì fēizhǎn de sùdù bān kuāi. For the past thirty years, Japan's rate of economic development has been very fast.

jīkuì...sùdù, "to quicken the pace of..." "to speed up":

Wǒmen yào jīkuì gōngzuò sùdù. We must speed up our work.
Zhōngguó yào jīkuì shìxiàn Sìgè Xiàndàihuàde sùdù. China wants to speed up the Four Modernizations.

[The opposite of jīkuì sùdù is fàngmàn sùdù.]
Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

zhìliàng: "quality" Also pronounced zhìliàng or zhǐliàng.

Shùliàng duō, zhìliàng yě bù cuò. They are plentiful and of good quality.

In some contexts, you can use the syllable zhǐ/zhí to stand for zhìliàng and the syllable liàng to stand for shùliàng:

Zhǐ, liàng, dōu bù cuò. The quality and quantity are both good.
This dialogue takes place in Beijing. Early one morning, Professor Armstrong is out for a walk near his hotel when he runs into Lin Xinhai of the China Travel Service.

L: Jiàoshòu, nǐ zǎo!


Good morning, Professor!

L: Jīntiān tiānqì yě bù cuò, méiyǒu fēng, chūlái zhōu duì shěnǐ yǒu hǎochu.

A: Shǐ a! Jīntiān de tiānqì zhēn shūfu.

L: Jiàoshòu, nǐ jīntiān hǎoxiàng hěn gàoxìng ma!


Good morning, how are you. The morning air is a little fresher. I like to go for a walk outside in the morning.

The weather is pretty nice today too. There's no wind. It's good for the health to go out and do some walking.

L: Jīntiān wǒmen jīu kěyì qù cānguān le.

A: Shǐ a. Wǒ shì gāo jiǎoyu gōngzuò de. Zài Měiguó de shìhou, wǒ chángcháng xīhuan kàn xīe guānyú Zhōngguó jiāoyù qǐngkuǎngde shì, kěshì, yě ràng de yánjiūde huò, zhòng juéde cǎilǐ de gòu, yǒu hěn duō dōngzì bù gòu lǐkào, qí, yǒu shì wǒ yìduō cǎilǐ de Zhōngguó qǐngkuǎng chǎbié hěn dà, suǒyì ...

Professor, you seem so happy today.

Yes, The weather today is really pleasant.

Yes, I am. You know, I've been wanting to go visit Beijing University for such a long time, but I never had the chance to.

But we're going today.

L: Nǐn yǒu shénme wèntí jiù tíchulai, yěxǐ wǒ kěyǐ bāng nǐ yìdiǎnr máng me?

A: Wǒ děngyídēng, wǒ shìshì, kān nǐng bu nǐng shuōqǐngchu a!

That's right. I'm in education. When I'm in the States I often like to read books about education in China, but I always feel that we don't have enough data to do actual research on it. There's a lot we don't understand well enough.

Furthermore, some of the data is very different from the [true] situation in China, so...

Ask me any questions you have, maybe I can help you with them.

Wait a second, let me try and see if I can explain it clearly.

L: Méi guānxì, nǐn mānmānr shuō.

A: NY déngyídēng, wǒ shìshì, kān nǐng bu nǐng shuōqǐngchu a!

It doesn't matter, take your time.
A: Zài nǐmen zhèr, dàxué fēn yǐlǐ èrliè, zhōngguó xīlùxué yě yǒu zhōngdiǎn zhòng- xīlùxué hé pǔtōng zhōng- xīlùxuéde qūbié. Zhèiyàng zuòde mìshí shì shénme ne? Wǒ shì shuō... 

L: Nǐ, nǐ shuōxiàqu. 

A: Wǒde yīsī shì, yàoshi bā zhōng- diǎn fāng zài jīgè xuéxiào- shàng, nèng bù nèng pūbiàn tí- gāo jiàoyuè shūpǐng ne? 

L: Zhèshì yīge hěn bāodé wèntí. Nǐ zhídào, zhōngguó yǒu shíyīduō rénkǒu, yǒu nàme duō rén xùyào shènhuò jiàoyuè, kěshì jiàoyuè de qǐngkuàng bù néng ràng rén mǎnyì. 

A: Nǐ. 

L: Tōnkè shì jǐngguó Wénhuà Dà Gé- mìng yīhū, jiàoyuè fǎngmiàn zhèn yǒu bù shǎo wèntí, suǒyì zài múqián de qǐngkuàng xià, wǒmen děi bā zhōngdiǎn fāng zài yǐshǐ fēn dàxué, zhōngguó, hé xīlùxuéshàng. 

A: Nàme, zài zhōngdiǎn dàxué lǐ, nǐmen rénwéi zú fù zhěyède gōngzuò yǒu shì shénme ne? 

L: Shǒuxiān děi xiǎng bān fǎ tígāo jiàoshìde shūpǐng. Xiānzhǎi jiàoshì shūliàng bù gōu, shū- pǐng bù gāo. 

A: Nǐ, zhè shì yīge zhěngyuède wèntí. 

L: Shì, zhègè wèntí hé tígāo zhèngměi mínzúde jiàoyuè shūpǐng yǒu hěn dà de guānxì. 

A: Hǎo, nàmè diēr ne? 

L: Gāo Sīge Xiàndàihuà xīyuǎo hěn duō shǒuguò jiàoyuède rén, kěshì zhèjǐjiān shì bù shì zāi duān...
A: Wǒ dōng, wǒ dōng.

L: Suǒyì, wǒmen bān yìxiē zhòng- dīan xuéxiào, wèiè shì jiākuài jiāoyù suǒdú?

A: Jiākuài jiāoyù suǒdú? Yìde yǐsì shì shù, zhòngdiàn xuéxiào tiānjiān bǐjīng hǎo, xuéshēng, jiāoshǐ shuǐpíng yě bǐjīng gāo, zhēiyàng, xuéshēng jiù yǒu jīhuí zài bǐjīng duān duō shìjiān- li xué bǐjīng duōde dōngxi.

L: Duì le.

A: Nàme nǐmen pái chū guóde liúxué- shèng shì bù shì dōu shì gōng zhòngdiàn xuéxiàoliáide měi ne?

L: Tāmen duòbānr shì gōng zhòng- dīan dàxué lái de, tèbié shì yánjìushēng.

A: Wǒ jiāngguo jīwěi lái Měiguó nián shìde liúxuéshèng, tāmen dōu shì xué kēxué jīshùde. Tíngshuō tāmen xuéde fēicháng nǔlì. Zhōngguó liúxuéshèngdù xuéfèi zhòngdiàn shì kēxué jīshù, duì bù duì?

L: Mǐn shuōde duì, tāmen zhùyuào shì xué zīrùn kēxué. Zhě shì wǒmen mǔqìan xué dàde xuéyuào.

A: Tāmen huì guó yīhòu dōu gào yánjìu gōngsù dà ma?

L: Bù yìdāng. Wǒ xiǎng yǒu yī dà bùrèn hǎi dì bān dàxué dànrèn jiāoshǐ dōngxuě. Shíxīuăn Sīge Xiàndāihuì lǐbùkāi jiāoyù ma? Jiāoshǐyù, yǒu shìjiān gēi wǒ jiēshào jiēshào Měiguóde jiāoyù qǐngkuāng a!

A: Hǎo, nǐ duì nǎifāngmiàn façhù qǐng- kuǎng zài yǒu xǐngqu?
L: Wǒ duì xiǎoxué jiàoyuè, èrtóng jiàoyuè zuì yǒu xīngqu, yǐnwei, wǒ xiǎng yīge rèn lǐshì shòu jiào- yùde nèiduō wǒjiān shì fēi- cháng zhòngyào de.

A: Wǒ tóngyī nǐde kānfǎ, érqǐ, chūle shàng xué yǐwài, jiātìng hē shèhuìde jiàoyuè yě fēicháng zhòngyào. Yǒude shíhou, fùmùmén- de jiàoyuè qǐngkuàng hē háizímen yǒu fēicháng dāde guānxì.

L: Duì. Suǒyǐ gǎohǎo jiàoyuè shì zhēnggèr shèhuìde gōngzuò, wǒmen méi ge rèn dōu yǒu zé rèn.

A: Nǐ shuōde zhēn hǎo. Duì le, jīntiān wǒmen cānguānde Běidā, shì bu shì Zhōngguó zuǐ hǎo de dàxué ne?


Shǐjiān bù zǎo le, nǐ chī zǎo- fàn le měiyou?

A: Ėō, wǒ hǎi méi chī zǎofàn ne, wǒ mǎshāng jiù qù.

L: Bìe jǐ, wǒmen dēngzhe nǐn.

A: Hǎo, wǒ hěn kuài jīu lái.
Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American college student runs into a student from China at the Dupont Circle subway station in Washington, D.C.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

- suàn to be counted as (good, bad, etc.)
- kējì science and technology (abbreviation for kēxué jìshù)
- huànhuà conversation
- jiānchēng abbreviation
- yángé to be strict

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where did the American student learn Chinese? Where did the Chinese student learn English?

2. What was language study like at B.U.? Do you think it is different from an American university? How do you know?
3. What is the abbreviation for science and technology? Put the following into abbreviated form.

věnhuà (culture)  jǐjiào (education)  (the field of culture and education)
rénmín (the people)  dàhuì (general membership meeting)  (People's Congress)
yǔyán (spoken language)  wénzì (writing)  (language and literature)

4. What is the Chinese student studying?

5. According to the Chinese student, what kinds of science are not so clearly separated in modern society?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, a young Chinese teacher at Běijīng University walks over to her American student who is sitting under a tree reading a book.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

Lǐ Xùn (a famous Chinese author of the 1920s and 1930s)
yībōruăn otherwise
kùnnán difficulty
niánlíng age
Wěnhuà Dà Gèmíng Cultural Revolution
dàxué bìyēshēng college graduate
WénGé  Cultural Revolution (abbreviation of Wénhuà Dà Gémìng)
xuéyuàn  (academic) institute

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why does the student like to read Chinese literature? What is Ms. Lin's reaction?
2. Why are Chinese students who go abroad older than usual? What does the American say are other characteristics of these students?
3. How does Ms. Lin respond to the student's wish to talk with more Chinese?
4. Summarize this dialogue in two or three sentences.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

This conversation takes place at the Běijīng University library when an American graduate student and a Chinese graduate student happen to meet.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:
cǎnkǎoshū  reference book
xì  department (of a school)
huǒdòng  activity
làngfèi  to waste
jiāoshìshū  textbook

Questions for Exercise 4

1. How does the American student feel about his study of Chinese?
2. Are post-Cultural Revolution college students in China very familiar with the social situation in their country? Why?
3. Why do the American students want to go outside the university?
4. What sentences does the American use to take leave of the Chinese?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

At the Dupont Circle subway station in Washington, D.C., an American college student (A) runs into a student from China (B).

A: Duìbuqǐ, nǐ shì cóng Zhōngguó láide lǐxuéshēng ba? Excuse me, you must be a student from China, aren't you?

B: Shì a! Wǒde Zhōngwén zhènme hǎo, qùguò Zhōngguó ba? Yes! Your Chinese is so good! Have you been to China?

A: Hái méiyǒu, yǐhòu yǒu jīhuì wǒ yìdīng yào qù kǎnkan. Not yet, but if I get the chance to I'm sure I'll go visit.

B: Nǐ nǐde Zhōngwén jiù shì zài Huáshěngdūn xuéde? Then you learned all your Chinese here in Washington?

A: Ëng. Jīnián yīqián wǒ zài Jiāzhōu dàxué xuéguó yīnián, lái Huáshěngdūn yǐhòu yòu yǐzhǐ zài xué. Kǎshì Zhōngwén děng shuǐpíng hǎishì bù gòu gào. Mm. A few years ago I had a year of Chinese at the University of California, and since I came to Washington, I've been studying it all along. But my level in Chinese still isn't high enough.

B: Nǐ méiyǒu qùguò Zhōngguó, Zhōngwén zhènme hǎo le, wǒ lái Měiguó yǐjīng yīnián, Yīngwén shuǐpíng hǎishì tīgào de hěn mān. Your Chinese is this good and you've never been to China, but I've been in the States a year already and my English level is still improving very slowly.

A: Zài Zhōngguó dé shèhuì hǎo yì xuéguó Yīngwén ba? You studied English when you were in China, I suppose?

B: Xuéguó, xuéguó sānmíán bān ne! Sure, I studied it for three and a half years!

A: Shì Yīngguó Yīngwén? British English?

B: Shì, ér qǐshǐ yě dōu shì Zhōngguó rén, suǒyì chū guò yǐhòu xué duì dàxié wèntí shì tīngbùdòng, shuòbùchǔlái. Kān shū bǐ shuō huà róngyíduō le. Yes, and my teachers were all Chinese, so after I left China my biggest problem was that I couldn't understand people talking and I couldn't speak. Reading is a lot easier than speaking.

A: Zài Zhōngguó dé shèhuì, nǐ zài nèige dàxué nián shù? In China, what university were you studying at?

B: Zài Bāidà. Bāidà de Yīngwén hǎi suǒn bù cuò, bùguó, wǒmen xué kējì xuéshēng zhòngdiān shì kǎn shū, fānyì, bù shì huíhuà. At B.U. B.U. is pretty good for English, but for us students in science and technology the emphasis is on reading and translating, not on conversation.
A: Kājì? Shì bu shì kēxué jìshù?

B: Shì. Wǒmen chángcháng yǒng hěn duō jìkǔnghàng, duībuqǐ ya!


B: Shénme difangr?

A: Nǐmen cháng shuō kēxué fēn liàngbùfēn, yībùfēn shì shèhuì kēxué, yībùfēn shì zìrán kēxué. Nàme kēxué jìshù shuōde jiù shì zìrán kēxué ma?

B: Zhè bù shì nǐmén yǎn'gēde, tèbié shì xiàndài shèhuì, zìrán kēxué hé shèhuì kēxué jiù fēn de bù nǐmén bù tài yǐyàng.


B: Òu, chē lái le, wǒ yào shàng chē le. Yīhòu yǒu jīhuì zài tán.

A: Hǎode, xiàchǐ wǒmén yòng Yīngwén tán.

B: Hǎo, xièxiè nǐ, zǎijìān.

A: Zǎijìān.

"Kājì"? Is that science and technology?

Right. We use a lot of abbreviations, pardon me!

No problem. But there's still something I don't understand.

What?

You often say that science has two divisions. One is social science and the other is natural science. So does science and technology refer only to the natural sciences?

This [distinction] isn't so strict. Especially in modern society, the natural sciences and the social sciences aren't so clearly separated.

I agree with that. On questions of categorization, we have a lot of ideas that are different from yours.

Oh, here comes the train. I have to get on it. In the future we'll talk some more if we get the chance.

All right. Next time we'll talk in English.

Okay, thank you. Good-bye.

Good-bye.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

On the campus of Běijīng Language Institute, and American student (B) is sitting under a tree reading a book. A young teacher (A) from the Chinese department walks over to chat.

A: Zài nián shénme ne?

What are you reading?

B: Ò, Lín Lǎoshī, nín hǎo! Wǒ zài kān Lǚ Xùn Xiǎnshēngde xiǎoshūō.

Oh, Miss Lín (Teacher Lín), how are you! I'm reading some fiction by (Mr.) Lǚ Xùn.

A: Shi nǐyípiān na?

What piece?

59
B: "Yào." Wǒ hěn xīhuan Lǚ Xùn Xīfāngshèng de xīzhūshuò.

A: Wǒ xìng, zài Měiguó de shìhou, Zhōngguó lǐshì, Zhōngguó wénxué, nǐ dàgài niàn de bù shēnɡ.

B: Xué Zhōngwén, bǐzhǔ shǒuxiān xué yìdiǎnr hěn de wénxué, dōnɡ yìdiǎnr Zhōngguó wénhuà, yào bùrén xué Zhōngwén yǐdīnɡ yǒu hǎn dàde kùnɡuān. Zhōngguó lǐxué- shènɡ yě shì zhèiyī yǔ shuō ma?

A: Wǒmen de xuéxí tiāojìàn hái shì bù cuò de, kěshì lǐxuéshènɡ chū guó yǐqián dǎi duì nèige guǎnjīde wénhuà zuò bǐyǒude lǐqiān. Zài zhèfānɡmínɡlián, wǒ- men zuò de hái hǎn bǐ gōu.

B: Wǒ tīnɡshuō Zhōngguó lǐxué- shènɡ de niánlǐng dōu bǐ tài xiǎo le, duōbān shì Wénhuà Dà Gémínɡ yǐqián bǐyěde.

A: Shì. Wénhuà Dà Gémínɡ yǐqián de dàxué bǐyěshènɡ pǔtián de zhǎoliánɡ bǐjiāo gāo, hěn WénGě yǐhóude dàxuéshènɡ chābié bǐ xiǎo.

B: Nàme shūliàng ne?

A: Shūliàng yě bù shǎo.

B: Nàme zhěxīnɡ bǐyěshènɡ shì bù shì dōu dānrén bǐjiāo zhònɡyàode gōnɡzuò ne?


"Medicine." I like Lǚ Xùn's fiction very much.

I guess you've probably read quite a lot of Chinese history and literature in America.

To study the Chinese language, you have to first study a little history and literature, and understand a little Chinese culture, otherwise you're sure to have a hard time studying the language. Do Chinese who go abroad to study do the same thing?

Our conditions for study are fairly good, but before a student goes abroad, he ought to acquire the requisite understanding of the country (he is going to). In this area, we have as yet done far from enough.

I understand that the Chinese students going abroad aren't very young; most of them graduated [from college] before the Cultural Revolution.

Yes. In general the quality of college graduates from before the Cultural Revolution is higher. They're quite different from the post-Cultural Revolution college students.

How about in terms of numbers?

Their numbers are quite large, too.

So do these graduates all take on rather important jobs?

They're not all the same. At present, there are many pre-Cultural Revolution college graduates who have taken on rather important jobs. For example, in our Institute, those who do their work comparatively well are mostly college students from that time. Of course there are older ones as well.
B: Wǒ hěn xīnshuān wǒmén de lǎoshī, yě hěn xīnshuān Yǐyàn Xuéyuàn, wǒ zhī shì xīwàng yǒu bǐjiāo duō de jīhuì hé Zhōngguό xuěshèng, lǎoshī duō tāntān.


B: Lǐn Lǎoshī yǐhuǐ jǐān.

I like our teachers very much, and the Institute, too. I just wish we would have more opportunities to talk with the Chinese students and teachers.

All right, we'll talk more when we get the time. You go on reading. See you in a while.

See you in a while, Miss Lǐn.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

An American graduate student (A) walks up the stairs in front of the Běijīng University library. A Chinese graduate student (B), whose arms are full of books, is trying to open the door with his foot.

A: Wǒ lái, wǒ lái! Děngyídēng, wǒ lái bāng nǐ kǎi mén.

B: Xièxie nǐ.

A: Zhè dōu shì nǐ jiède shū a?

B: Shī a! Yǒngle liàngge xīngqìde gōngfu, hǎo róngyì cái kānwán le.

A: Bú cuò, liàngge xīngqì kàn zhéme duō Yīngwén cǎnkāoshū, sùdu tú mān nǎ!

(They enter the door and "B" goes to return his books. "A" sits down at a table. A few minutes later, "B" comes over to her.)

A: Xǐwǔ jǐfēn zhòng zài jǐnqu kān shū, hǎo bù hǎo a?

B: Hào. Néitiān, xǐlǐ yánjīshēng kāi mǔ, dàjiā dōu rènwéi nǐ tǎn-de hén hǎo, yě dōu juédé nǐde Zhōngwén bǐ gāng lái Běidēde shí-hou bāduō duō le.

A: Kēshī wǒ náishì juéde xuéxí sùdu tài mān, wǒmén dōu xīwàng néng jiàkùài sùdu, tǐgāo shuō huá de shuípíng.

I'll get it, I'll get it. Wait a second, I'll open the door for you.

Thank you.

These are all books you borrowed?

Yeah! It took me long enough to finish reading them—two weeks!

Not bad! To read all these English reference books in two weeks, that's a pretty good speed!

(They enter the door and "B" goes to return his books. "A" sits down at a table. A few minutes later, "B" comes over to her.)

Why don't you rest a few minutes before you go in to study, okay?

Okay. The other day when the graduate students in the department held a meeting, everyone thought that what you said was very good, and we all felt that your Chinese is much better now than when you first came to B.U.

But I still feel that our pace of study is too slow. We all wish we could speed up the pace to improve our speaking.
B: 既然把你的中文学习当作一个任务，你想把它作为一种享受吗？

Wǒmen zhèixī xiùshèng duōbān yè
dōu shì chōng pǔtōnggé jītǐnglì
lǎide ma. Tèbì shì jīngguó
Wénhuà Dà Géming yǐzhòuè
dàxué
dōu zài shèhuìshì
shàng gòngzúguó hěn duō nián,
bǐjīng xióo xiào jī
nǐmen shǐxiàn Sìge Xiǎndài-
shì de qìngkuǎng.

A: .luó, zhè hái shì yǒu qūbìde.
Shèhuìde qìngkuǎng gèn dàxué
de qìngkuǎng hěn bù yìyàng.
Wǒmen lèi Zhōngguó niàn shì
lǐxuéshèng, yánjìushèng, dōu
xiàng duō lǐxiào Zhōngguó
dè
dē xīn xǐ xīn lǐxí
nǐmen shǐxiàn Sìge Xiǎndài-
shì de qìngkuǎng.

B: 仁安，仁安。谁说你不懂
dōu shì shèhuì huǒdòng dà
dī huǐ lǎngfēi nǐmen bù shào shí-
jíān.

A: 0! Méiyǒu wèntí, zài Mèiguó
dàxué, wǒmen bù jī shì zài
xuéxiào hě tūshūguǎnlì nián shì,
shèhuì shènghuó shì wǒmen zú
zhōngyuède jīxiàoshì, yě shì zú
hào de lǐxiào.

B: Hǎode, hǎode, wǒ yīdǐng hě xī-
lí tányítàn, duō gěi nǐmen àn
yídīnghángguān fúwèndē huǒ-
dòng.
A: Hǎode, xièxiè ni. Wǒ kuài jīnqu
nián shū ba! Bú zhǎn nǐde shí-
jiān le. Zàijiàn.

B: Zàijiàn.

Good, thank you. Now you go on in
and study. I won't take up any more
of your time. Good-bye.

Good-bye.
Unit 3, Reference List

1. A: Tāmen gòu zhēige gōngshè jǐjīo shèmè? Dàmiàoshāng yǒu měiyǒu xīzhē? What do they call this commune? Is it written on the list?
B: Xièzhe ne, jiào "Sījiāng." Yes, it's called Sījiāng.

2. A: Zhēige gōngshè shìwù duō dàdù- de chānliàng dōu zhèmè gāo ma? Is the output this high in all fifteen brigades of this commune?
B: Chābùduō, zài shǎndōng dì liānghē dàdù, chānliàng shěn duō yídōng. Almost. The two brigades in the mountains have somewhat lower outputs.

3. A: Běijīng jǐngwū zhēngchǎn yì zhōng yǒu míngde dàōzi, jiào shèmè? There's a famous kind of rice produced in the suburbs of Běijīng. What's it called?

4. A: Guǎngwú yìgòng yǒu jīge píngyuán? How many flatland regions are there in the whole country?
B: Měitiān bǐjiào dàde yǒu sìjié, dōu shì zhēngchǎn liānhuò zhēngzuò diǎo. There are four which are relatively large; all of them are major grain-producing regions.

5. A: Néige zhēngchǎn shūcài duō dādù zì yǒu liùshí wà? The brigade that produces vegetables has only sixty households?
B: Shì a, èrbǎitiànuò rén méimǐnián mǎi guíjiě bù shìsuǒ de cǎi nà! Yes, for two hundred people, they sell a lot of vegetables to the state every year!

6. A: Xiānshāi, gǎo jǐngjì jiànsè hǎi shì Zhōngguó rénmīn zuì zhōngyìdà de gōngzuò à! Today, engaging in economic construction is still the most important work of the Chinese people!
B: Shì, suírénnián zhàoxiā niàn fāzhǎn suǒdú hěn kuài, kǎishi jǐngjì hǎi shì wǒmèndé gōngzuò zhōngdiǎn. Yes, although the pace of development has been very fast the past few years, the economy is still the main focus of our work.
7. A: Hěi! Nǐmen de cài dà shòu de bù shāo a!
   Wow! You've harvested quite a lot from your vegetable plots!
B: Jiù shì mà, māimāi dī dōu shōu yǐwǎnduō jīn na!
   Sure, we harvested over ten thousand catties from each mu of land!
8. A: Zhèige gōngshè jǐyìshū yǐhòu, mǔchǎn tǐgāole duō- shǎo?
   Since this commune was mechanized, how much has the yield per mu
   been increased?
B: Tǐgāole yǐbān duō yǐdiǎn, chābūduō bǐfǎnzhǐ wǒshìyī.
   It was raised a little more than half, about fifty one percent.
9. A: Nǐ jiù cānguānle "Shǐjíqìng?"
   Biède jǐge xiān, jīngōngshè ne? Shènme shínhòu qù yā?
B: Guò jītiān jǐ qù, péi jǐ- wèi nóngyè zhuānjì qǐ qù.
   You've only visited Shǐjíqìng? How
   about the other advanced communes?
   When are you going to them?
10. A: Zhèige dìqūde nóngyè shāng- chān yǒu shènme tèdīdiǎn ma?
    Is there anything distinctive about
    the agricultural production of this
    region?
B: Wǒmen shǐzhè zūzhíle jǐge...
    zhuānyèshūdào gōngshè, tāmén- de shèngchān bǐjiāo yǒu
    tèdīdiǎn.
    We have organized a few specialized
    communes on a trial basis. Their
    production set-up is rather distinctive.
11. A: Nǐmen gōngshè yǒu zhèmē duō dà tuōlǐ?
    Your commune has so many large trac-
    tors!
B: Nǐ, píngjiū měige dàduī èrshíwàn, wǒmen hǎi xiāng
duō mǎi jītāi ne!
    Yes, every brigade has twenty on the
    average, and we want to buy a few
    more!
12. A: Chōng tūnjiānháng kān, nǐmen
    gōngzuòdē hǎo xīnkě.
    From the picture it looks like you're
    working very hard.
B: Mèiyou shènmé xīnkě, jǐù shī zài xuéxiào hòubianr zhòng
diànr cái.
    Not so hard. We're just planting
    some vegetables behind the school.
13. zhuānyè
14. jīqí (jīqí)
bǎifēn shì percent

cài dì vegetable plot
chǎnliàng output, yield

dàduì (production) brigade
dàozǐ rice; paddy
dì earth, soil; land; fields

fāzhǎn to develop, to expand, to grow

gōngshè commune
guǎn X jiǎo Y to call X Y

-hù household, family
-buè -ize

jiānshè to construct, build; construction,
reconstruction

jiēqū suburbs, outskirts
jīngxīdào (a kind of rice plant)
jìxièhuà to mechanise

-kōu (counter for people)

liǎngshí grain, cereals

mànjī (surface) area
-mǔ mu, a unit of area
mūchān per-mu yield

píngjūn average, mean
píngyuán plain, flatlands

quānguó the whole country

rénmín the people

shāndì mountainous region, hilly area
dsōu to harvest
shūcài vegetable
Shǐjìng (a commune in Běijīng suburbs)

-tái (counter for machines)
tèdiǎn distinctive trait, characteristic
tóngshǐ tractor

túpǐán picture, photograph
xiānjìn
xǐnghū

to be advanced

to be hard work; to be toilsome,
to be arduous; to work hard, to
go through hardships, to go to
great trouble

zhòng
zhǔānjì
zhǔānyè
zhǔānyèhuà
zhǔzhī

to plant

specialist, expert

special line/field/discipline
to specialize; specialization
to organize, to form
Unit 3, Reference Notes

1. A: Tāmen guǎn zhèige gōngshè jiào shénme? Dànzìshàng yǒu méiyǒu xǐzhē?
   B: Xǐzhē ne, jiào "Sìjiāqìng." Yes, it’s called Sìjiāqìng.

Notes on No. 1

guǎn...jiào...: Guǎn A jiào B means "to call A B."
Guǎngdōng rén guǎn qīpáo jiào "chángshān." Cantonese call qīpáos (a kind of dress) "chángshān."

gōngshè: "commune" This is short for rénmín gōngshè, "people’s commune" (the word rénmín is taught in exchange 6). Gōng means "public," and shè is an "organized body."

People’s communes, of which there are now over 52,000 in China, are the administrative units of the countryside. There are three levels of commune organization: the production team, with from eleven to over one hundred households; the production brigade, with from twenty to over one thousand households; and the commune itself, with from six to seventeen brigades or from fifty-six to 275 teams. A typical commune might have a population of 22,500 people, broken down into fifteen production brigades of three hundred families each, and each brigade would in turn be composed of ten production teams of thirty families. (Of course, no actual commune would be divided up so evenly.) A typical county might be made up of thirteen communes of this size.

The people’s communes were formed after a long series of changes in the organization of the countryside, beginning with the Land Reform Movement of 1950. This movement distributed the land to the peasants; the next step was to begin the coordination of their efforts in production. They did this in 1951 by forming mutual aid teams, also called work exchange teams. The peasants still owned their own land, plows, and livestock, but they pooled their manpower, tools, and other resources to get the work done.

In 1953, elementary agricultural cooperatives were organized by merging several mutual aid teams. The land, tools, and livestock became the property of the cooperative, but the profits from the land were distributed, not retained by the commune for investment. In 1956, when advanced agricultural cooperatives were established, the distribution of profits was abolished.

In 1958, the last step to communize China was taken. The people’s communes were formed by the merging of several advanced agricultural cooperatives. What was formerly an advanced agricultural cooperative became a production brigade. The original plan for communization had called for completion in 1967. Since no major problems were encountered, the plan was completed nine years ahead of time.
Today, commune members still live in individual houses. All the land, buildings, shops, clinics, large machinery, electrical power stations, factories, and so on, belong to the commune. However, the planning of the production and the payment of the members, which depends on the amount of production, is done on the production team level. All the teams have their own livestock, but they take turns borrowing large machines such as planters or tractors from the commune. Production teams often specialize in one type of activity, such as crop raising, machinery repair, or animal husbandry. Production brigades handle tasks which are beyond the capacity of a team, such as irrigation or the purchasing of a tractor. Truly large projects like road construction or the establishment of a large, well-equipped hospital, must be taken on by the commune.

**yuó méiyou xiézhe:** -zhe is the marker of duration. Together with a verb, it describes a STATE, for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mén</th>
<th>kāizhe.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(The door is in the state of having been opened.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"The door is open."

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mén</th>
<th>guānzhe.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(The door is in the state of having been closed.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"The door is closed."

Thus, xiézhe, in exchange 1, means literally "in the state of having been written."

To make a verb plus -zhe negative, use méi(you) (not bù):

Mén méi kāizhe. The door is not open.
Mén méi guānzhe. The door is not closed.
Dānzishang méi xiézhe. It isn't written on the list.

To make a question, use one of the following patterns:

Mén kāizhe ma?
Mén yǒu méiyou kāizhe?
Mén kāizhe méiyou?

Ne is often added onto the end of a sentence with -zhe:

Mén kāizhe ne ma? Is the door open?
Kāizhe ne. Yes, it's open.
Many speakers of standard Chinese do not use this -the; they would replace it by phrasing such as Mèn kǎile and Dànzìshāng yōu méiyǒu xiě (or xiē le méiyǒu). These sentences are also perfectly good Chinese.

Stígíng: A commune in rural Běijīng. Literally, the name means "four-seasons-green," in other words, "green all year round."

Half the population of the municipality of Běijīng lives in rural areas, in 272 people's communes. The principal crops are wheat, rice, and vegetables, including cabbage, eggplants, cucumbers, and tomatoes. There are also orchards producing apples, pears, peaches, and persimmons. About half the vegetables grown in Běijīng's communes supply the city's needs completely and half are shipped elsewhere.

2. A: Zhéige gòngshè shǐwūgè dàduì-de chǎnliàng dōu zhēme gāo ma? Is the output this high in all fifteen brigades of this commune?

B: Chábuduō, zài shāndì lǐxiàng dàduì, chǎnliàng shǎo yìdiǎnr. Almost. The two brigades in the mountains have somewhat lower outputs.

Notes on No. 2

dàduì: "(production) brigade," short for shēngchǎn dàduì.

chǎnliàng: "output, yield," literally, "production-amount."

shāndì: "mountainous region; hilly area; hilly country," literally, "mountain-land."

Ãrbǎ'nǐyà shì shāndì guójiā. Albania is a mountainous country.

Zài shān Output is somewhat lower in mountainous regions.

Neige difang shì shān , kǎi chē bù tài fāngbiàn That's hilly country; it isn't easy to drive there.

3. A: Běijīng jiāoqū shēngchǎn yìzhōng yǒu míngde dàozī, jiào shénme? There's a famous kind of rice produced in the suburbs of Běijīng. What's it called?


Notes on No. 3

jiāoqū: "suburbs, outskirts" The bound form jiāo means "suburbs," as in
in Běijīng xījīn, "the western suburbs of Běijīng," yuànjīn, "the outer suburbs," and jīn jīnqū, "the close suburbs." (Qū, "area, district," will be introduced separately in Unit 5 of this module.)

Běijīng jīnqū yǐgōng yǒu èrbāiqiāoshìèrge gōngshè. Altogether, there are 272 communes in the suburbs of Běijīng.

Sījīng gōngshè zài Běijīngde jīn jīnqū. The commune Sījīng is in the close suburbs of Běijīng.

dàcǐ: "rice" in the paddy or after harvesting but before hulling. (After hulling, it is called mǐ, and when cooked it is called fàn.)

Jīngxīdào: "Capital-West Rice," a variety famous for its good taste.

Běijīngde jīng: "jing as in Běijīng" In conversation, you identify a word or character by giving a common phrase in which it is used. The pattern for doing this is

Phrase -de Word
e.g., yī èr sān sì -de sì "'four' as in 'one two three four'"

This pattern can be especially useful when you tell someone your Chinese name. If you were called Chén Dǐngwén ( ), for example, you could identify the characters of your first name by saying yīdīngde dǐng, wènxuéde wén, "dīng as in yīdīng ('certainly'), and wén as in wènxué ('literature')."

dōng-xī-nán-běi: While in English we usually name the directions of the compass in the order "north, south, east, west," in Chinese they are usually named in the order

dōng xī nán běi or dōng nán xī běi
east west south north

1. A: Quánguó yǐgōng yǒu jīge píng-yuán? How many flatland regions are there in the whole country?

B: Wú Zuòrénde huà zài quánguó běn yǒu míng. The paintings of Wú Zuòrén are famous throughout the country.

Quánguó chānliáng zuì gāode diqū shì Sīchuān. The area of the country with the highest output is Sīchuān.

Notes on No. 1

quánguó: "the whole country"

Wú Zuòrénde huà zài quánguó běn yǒu míng. The paintings of Wú Zuòrén are famous throughout the country.

Quánguó chānliáng zuì gāode diqū shì Sīchuān. The area of the country with the highest output is Sīchuān.
Běijīng Yīǎolíng-yào Zhōngguó de jīlǐyú shìliǎng quānguǒ dīyī. The educational quality of Běijīng’s No. 101 Middle School is first in the country.

miǎni: "(surface) area" (For the second example, you need to know píngfāng gōnglǐ, "square kilometer.")

Zhèìge gōngshède miǎni duō dà? What is the area of this commune?

Zhōngguó de miǎni shì jīliù bǎi liùshīwàn píngfāng gōnglǐ. China’s area is 9.6 million square kilometers.

miǎni bǐjiāo dà de yǒu sìge: This is a useful structure with yǒu:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Miǎni bǐjiāo dà de (píngyuán)</th>
<th>yǒu sìge.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(As for the ones [flats]</td>
<td>there four.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with a relatively large area,</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"There are four with a relatively large area."

Tā bù yuǎn yì qù Zhōngguó de zhùyào liǎngge. (As for the reasons why he, | yǒu you |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>yuǎnfēn</th>
<th>zhùyào</th>
<th>liǎngge.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(As for the reasons why he doesn't want to go to China,</td>
<td>mainly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"There are mainly two reasons why he doesn't want to go to China."

Zuōtiān měi lǎi (rén) yǒu duōshão? (As for those [people] who didn’t come yes-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tèr,</th>
<th>yǒu yǔ</th>
<th>duōshão?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(As for those [people] who didn’t come yesterday, there how many?)</td>
<td>were</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"How many people were there who didn’t come yesterday?"

Zhōngguó shuǐde nàme hǎode Měiguó rén méiyòu jǐge. (As for Americans who speak Chinese that well, |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Méiguó rén</th>
<th>méiyòu jǐge.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(As for Americans who speak Chinese that well,</td>
<td>there a few.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well,</td>
<td>aren’t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"There aren’t but a few Americans who speak Chinese that well."

liǎngshí: "grain, cereals," but in Chinese terminology this can also include other staples like beans and sweet potatoes.

5. A: Néige shēngchǎn shūcài dàduì zhī yǒu liùshí bù! The brigade that produces vegetables has only sixty households!

B: Shì à, èrbǎishíwàn rén mǎi nián mài gěi guǎnjī bù shǎo-de cài na! Yes, for two hundred people, they sell a lot of vegetables to the state every year!
Notes on No. 5

hù(r): "household, family"  The original meaning of this word was "door." Now it has become the counter for households. Besides its use in exchange 5, -hù can also be followed by the noun rénjiā, "people-home," that is, "family":

Zhègè dàduì yǒu duōshǎo hù rénjiā?

How many households are there in this brigade?

Zài Měiguó, chābùduō méihǎo dōu yǒu diànshì.

In American, almost every family has a television.

kǒu: Literally, "mouth," this is the counter for people considered as making up a family, as in

Mǐ jiā yǒu jīkǒu rén?

How many people are there in your family?

mài gěi guǎnzhǐ: "sell to the state"  Every year, a production team must give a certain percentage (usually from five to seven percent) of its produce and cash income in taxes to the state. In addition, they must sell a quota of grain to the state, the quantity being established according to the population of the team, and the area and productivity of the land. If the team is left with additional grain after fulfilling their quota, they decide for themselves how much of it they will sell for cash to the state at a higher price and how much will be put into the team's grain reserves. The state sets quotas for grains; fruit and vegetable supply and demand are coordinated by local government authorities.

...bù shěnde cài na!: Ne is not a new word for you; it is just a contraction of ne and a. You have learned that ne is the marker of absence of change. Here it has a special function: to show that the speaker is trying to convince the listener of the greatness of an amount, the great extent of a condition, or a fact which surpasses ordinary expectations. Examples:

Tāde shòurù bù shǎo ne!

His income is not small (i.e., more than you would suspect!)

Tā shuōle yào zuò dào hěn wǎn ne.

She said she was going to work until very late.

Hǎo rē'naode dīfang na!

What a lively place!

Kàn tā hái méi nǐng, hái néng qù zuò jiāoshōu ne!

Isn't it something that someone as young as he can be a professor?

Yīgě xìngqī nǐ gǒu? Lǐxiàng

How could one week be long enough to visit so many places? Two weeks wouldn't even be enough!

xǐngqī hái bù gǒu ne!

Imagine, such a grown-up person crying!

Zhèmě dàde rén hái kū na!

73
6. A: Xiànsài, bǐng jíngji jiànsè
hái shì Zhōngguó rénmín zuì
zhòngyùdà gōngzuò à!

Today, engaging in economic construc-
tion is still the most important
work of the Chinese people!

B: Shì, suǒrán zhèxià nián
fāzhǎn sùdú hěn kuài, kěshì
jíngji hái shì wǒměnde gōng-
zuò zhòngdiǎn.

Yes, although the pace of development
has been very fast the past few
years, the economy is still the main
focus of our work.

Notes on No. 6

jiànsè: "to construct, to build up; construction" This is mostly used in a special sense: to construct or build up a country. The jargon "socialist construction," "the construction of China," or "China reconstructs" conveys an attitude toward the "mission" facing the country: to build China from the ruins left by a semi-feudal, semi-colonial society into a socialist power and to create the conditions for the transition to Communism. "Socialist construction" includes the reform of the superstructure as well as the development of the national economy.

Wǒmén yào bǐ Zhōngguó jiànsè-
chéng yīge xiàndàihuàdé shè-
huizhuyī guójìā.

We want to build China into a
modern socialist nation.

rénmín: "the people" You have seen this word already in Rénmínbì, "People's currency." Distinguish between rénmín and rénmen. Rénmen (with
the plural ending -men) refers to any and all people, without class impli-
cations. It has approximately the same scope as dàjiā, "everyone." Rénmín, on the other hand, refers to the broad masses and lower-level cadres, and excludes state and class enemies.

Zhōngguó rénmín xīwàng néng
shēnghuóshè fāngshì.

The Chinese people hope to be able
to live peacefully and settled lives.

Quánguó yígōng yǒu wūwàn èrqiān-
duō rénmín gōngshè.

There are over 52,000 people's
communes in the whole country.

fāzhǎn: "to develop, to grow" In the Society module, you learned the
adjectival verb fādá, "to be developed." Now you see the action verb for "to
develop."

Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ zài nǔlì fāzhǎn
gōngyè.

The Chinese government is working
hard to develop industry.

Tā yánjiū fāzhǎnzhòng guó 'iāde
jíngjí qíngkuàng.

He studies the economic situation
of developing countries.

74
7. A: Hē! Nǐmende càidì shōude bù shèng a! Wow! You’ve harvested quite a lot from your vegetable plots!

B: Jiù shì ma, měimí dǐ dōu shōu yǐwǎnduō jīn na! Sure, we harvested over ten thousand catties from each mu of land!

Notes on No. 7

càidì: "vegetable plots" or "vegetable fields" (large or small).

shōu: "to harvest"

Lǎo Wáng de càidì māníán shōude fǎnqiě dōu hěn duō. Lǎo Wáng harvests a lot of tomatoes from his vegetable plots every year.

Shēubudāo liǎngshì, zěnme chī fàn ne? If we can’t harvest any grain, how will we eat? (rhetorical question said by farmers when working in the fields)

mǔ: A Chinese unit of area equal to 1/15 hectare. In English this is simply written mu (or sometimes mou).

dǐ: "land," "ground," or "fields"

Zhēikūi dǐ yǐqián shì wǒ fùqìn de. This piece of land used to belong to my father.

Tā cóng dīshāng zhǎo dào le nèizhī bǐ. He found that pen on the ground.

Shuǐ dīshāng ba! Lián jiāoshōu dōu shuǐ nàr ne! Sleep on the ground! Even professors sleep there!

Zhème zāo nǐmen jiù dào dīlǐ qù gōngzuò la! You’re going to work in the fields so early!

shōude bù shǎo: "harvested quite a lot" Here are some more examples of the pattern Verb -de Quantity:

Nǐ chīde tài shǎo. You’re eating too little.

Guānyǔ zhēige, wǒ zhīdàode bù duō. I don’t know much about this.

Tā kàn xiǎoshūō kàn de bǐ wǒ duō. He reads more fiction than I.

Wǒ bù shì jiāo nǐ shǎo mǎi yīdiānr ma? Nǐ mǎide tài duō le! Didn’t I tell you not to buy very much? You bought too much!

75
8. A: Zhèige gōngzhè Jiānghuā yièduō, zhǔshān tīgāole duōshǎo? Since this commune was mechanized, how much has the yield per mu been increased?

B: Tīgāole yībān duō yīdiān, chàbuduō bāyīshí fēn wūshíyi. It was raised a little more than half, about fifty-one percent.

Notes on No. 8

Jiānghuā: "to mechanize; mechanization" Jiānghuā means "machinery," "mechanics," or "mechanical." -Huā is the syllable which corresponds to "-ize" (make into), which you learned in the previous unit in xiàndàihuā, "to modernize."

Nóngyè Jiānghuā xiànzài shí nóngcūndé zhōngdiān gōngzuǒ. Agricultural mechanization is now the key task in rural areas.

Mínmen dàdúde jiānghuá shūpíng xiāngdāng gāo a! The level of mechanization in your brigade is quite high!

Yībān duō yīdiān: "a little more than half" [The opposite, "a little less than half," could be said as chàyīdiǎnr yībān, yībān shǎo yīdiǎnr, or yībān bù dào yīdiǎnr.]

Bāyīshí fēn wūshíyi: "fifty-one percent." Chinese does not have a separate word for "percent," expressing percentages with the same pattern used for all fractions. First, therefore, you should learn how to express fractions. In Chinese, the two parts of a fraction are stated in the reverse order from English, with the word -zhǐ in between. (-Zhǐ is a literary word with the same use as -de: possessive or modification marker.)

sānfēn zhǐ èr

(3 parts 's 2) "two parts out of three," i.e., "two thirds"

Here are a few more examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{1}{2} & = èrzhǐ fēn yǐ\text{ }\text{ yī} & \frac{1}{3} & = sānfēn zhǐ yī & \frac{1}{4} & = sīfēn zhǐ yī & \frac{1}{20} & = èrshífēn zhǐ yī \\
\frac{5}{4} & = sīfēn zhǐ wù & \frac{5}{8} & = bāfēn zhǐ wù & \frac{17}{19} & = shíjiǔfēn zhǐ shíqī \\
\end{align*}
\]

Percentages (hundredths) are expressed like this:

Bāyīzhǐ wūshíyī

(100 parts 's 51) "fifty-one parts out of one hundred," i.e., "fifty-one one hundredths" or "fifty-one percent"

*Normally, of course, you would say yībān.
One hundred percent," therefore, is bāifěnzhī bǎi:

Měiguό rén. He is one hundred percent American.

9. A: Wǒ jiù cānguānle "Si jiōng?" Biéde jīge xiān,ín gōngshè ne? Shénme shíhou qù yā?

You've only visited Si jiōng? How about the other advanced communes? When are you going to them?

B: Guó jìtiān jí qù, pēi jí-wéi nóngyè zhūándiān yíqǐ qù.

We'll be going in a few days. We're going with several specialists in agriculture.

Notes on No. 9

biéde jīge...: "the other few" Compare:

Wǒ jiù cānguān gōngshè ma?

Bú cānguān biéde shènme difang?

You're only visiting communes? You're not going to visit any other kinds of places?

xiān,ín: "advanced." This is used to describe people, work units, or methods at a high level, worthy of emulation. Individuals may be designated as advanced workers (xiān,ín gōngzuòzhě) by their unit leaders or elected by their fellow workers, and units such as factories and communes may be designated as advanced by government authorities. To qualify as advanced, a unit must have carried out all political movements successfully, successfully put into effect each policy directive, and completely met the quota for its product under the national plan.

guó jìtiān: "in a few days" (literally, "pass a few days")

Qǐng nǐ guó yīhuǐ zài d划定.

Please call back in a while. (In this case, guó yīhuǐ means děng yīhuǐ.)

Zài guó jīge xīngqì, tāmen jiù yào shūo dàozi le.

In another few weeks, they are going to harvest the rice.

Bāba māma xiān dào le. You guóle yīhuǐ, dīdí māmei yě lài le.

Mother and father arrived first. Then after a while, younger brother and sister came too.

zhūándiān: "specialist, expert." The ending -jiā enters into many words describing people. It has a slightly different meaning from -zhě, which you learned in Unit 1. -zhě is only added to verbs; -jiā can be added to nouns as well as verbs. -zhě means simply "a person who..." but -jiā is used for professionals or specialists in some activity. Thus, zhūándiān is "professional writer, author," but zuòzhě is just "writer" (not specifying whether writing is the person's career).

The ending -jiā is added to subjects of study, as in zhèngzhi xuéjiā,
"political scientist," and jīngjìjuéjīa, "economist." In the PRC, some words with the ending -jīa carry elitist overtones and are sometimes replaced by other terms.

10. A: Zhègè dìqūde nónghè shēng-
chān yóu shénme tèdiǎn ma?

B: Wǒmen shìzhì zhēzhíle jīyě
zhuǎnyèhùde gōngshè, tā-
mendē shēngchǎn bǐjiāo yǒu
tèdiǎn.

Is there anything distinctive about the agricultural production of this region?

We have organized a few specialized communes on a trial basis. Their production set-up is rather distinctive.

Notes on No. 10

yóu shénme tèdiǎn ma?: "does...have any distinctive points?" is here translated more idiomatically as "is there anything distinctive about...?"

shìzhí zhēzhíle...: "trying-ly organized..." i.e., "organized on a trial basis"

Mí shìzhí nèiyáng zuò xīng
bu xīng.

Try doing it that way and see if it works.

Zhèishuāng xié wǒ shìzhí chuān,
chuānbushāng.

I tried to put these shoes on, but couldn't get them on.

Do not overuse shìzhí; there are other more common ways to express English "try." Sometimes the idea of trying is implicit in the verb itself, as in

Zhīpiān wénzhànghē wǒ kànle,
kānbuxiàqū.

I tried to read this article, but I couldn't.

Wǒ gēile, tā bù yào.

I tried to give it to him, but he didn't want it (wouldn't take it).

Sometimes, "try" can be expressed by reduplicating the verb:

Mí chuānchuan.

Try it on.

Wǒ chuānle chuān, chuānbushāng.

I tried to put it on, but couldn't get it on.

Wǒ kāile kāi, kāibukāi.

I tried to open it, but couldn't get it open.

or by a reduplicated verb plus kàn:

Wǒ mái zuòguo jīko zi, zuòzuò
kàn ba.

I've never made jīko zi (dumplings), but I can try.
zuòzhi: "to organize; organization"

Zhèbīn wéngzhǎng zuòzhì hěn bāo.

Wōmen zuòzhì yǐgē lǚxíngtuán, xiàng diào òuzhōu qù wànrwan.

Zhègē zuòzhì yǐjīng yǒu wūshíwàn rén le.

This article is well organized.
We organized a tour group; we want to go on a trip to Europe.
This organization already has 500,000 people.

zhūányè: "special line/field/discipline; specialization" This is used in the PRC for one's "major" subject in college, or for one's professional specialization.

Wǒ zài dàxué xuéde zhūányè shì zhèngzhìxué.
Shùxué zhūányè zhēn měi yīsì, nǐ wèishénme hái yào xué ta?
Zhègē zhūányè zài Zhōngguó hěn shǎo yǒu rén xué.

My major in college was political science.
Majoring in math is really boring; why do (did) you want to take it?
Very few people study this specialization in China.

zhūányèhuà: "specialized; specialization"

Gōngchǎngde zhūányèhuà yuè lái yuè pǐnbiàn le.
Zhūányèhuà(de) rénmín gōngshè yǒu tài dé hǎochī.

The specialization of factories is becoming more and more common.
Specialized communes have their advantages.

11. A: Nǐmen gōngshè yǒu zhèmé duō dà tuòlāi!  Your commune has so many large tractors!
B: Ng, píngjūn měigē dàduì érshítī, wōmen hái xiāng duō mǎi jítái ne! Yes, every brigade has twenty on the average, and we want to buy a few more!

Notes on No. 11

tuòlāi: "tractor" This word may be a sound borrowing from the English word "tractor," but it also makes good sense in Chinese, since the parts mean literally, "drag-pull-machine."

píngjūn: "average" This can be used as an adjective, an adverb, or a verb:

Zhōngguó gōngyuán píngjūn shòurù bā duō.
Píngjūn yīgē rén shì jīlǐzi zhèmme gòu!

The average salary of Chinese workers is not much.
How could an average of ten jiāozi (dumplings) per person be enough!
Pingjünqílai wǒmen mǎige rén yǒu shíwǔ qīn. When you average it out, each of us has ten dollars.

-mǎige dàduì èrshífāi: "twenty for each brigade" No verb is necessary here. Compare:
Yīge rén yǐkǔài. One piece (e.g., of cake) per person.
mǎige xǐngqǐ yīcì One piece every week.
Wǒmen xuéxiào lǐ píngjūn wēi ěr wǔshíyīge lǎoshī. In our school, there is one teacher for every five students on the average.

hái xiǎng duō mǎi jītái: "still want to buy a few more" English "more" sometimes contains the meaning of "still, additionally" (hái), so the word "still" is not absolutely necessary in the English translation for líb. Look at other examples of the common pattern hái...duō...:
Zhēng liǎo nánbái zì hái xiǎng duō chī yīge píngguǒ, kěshì tā máma bù gěi! This little boy (still) wanted to have another apple, but his mother wouldn't give it to him!
Wǒ hǎi xiǎng duō xué jīgè yuè Zhōngwén. I would like to study Chinese for another few months.
Tā hǎi dǎi duō děng jītīn cài nèng zōu. He still has to wait another few days before he can leave.

12. A: Cóng tǔqiānshāng kàn, nǐmen gōngzuò dé hěn xǐnkǔ. From the picture it looks like you're working very hard.
B: Mǎiyǒu shènme xǐnkǔ, jǐ shì zài xuéxiào hòubian zhòng diǎnr cài. Not so hard. We're just planting some vegetables behind the school.

Notes on No. 12

tǔqiān: "picture, photograph" This is usually used for photographs, as in tǔqiān zhǎnkǎi, "photo exhibition" (but some people use it for any kind of illustration).

xǐnkǔ: "to be arduous, tiring, hard" (literally, "pungent-bitter")

Tā hǎitiān xuě shì, wǎnshàng nián shū, tài xǐnkǔ le. It's too tiring for her, working during the daytime and studying at night.

80
Nǐ zhème xīnshī yào lèibīngde. You’re going to get sick from fatigue by working so hard.

zhòng: "to plant" or "to grow" things:

Zhēikuàidì zhòng shénme yě bu shōu. You don't harvest anything you plant on this land!

Zhòng liàngshí shì nónghuíde shì. Growing-grain is the business of the peasants.

Zhèige shǎoshù mínzú zài shān- shàng zhòngle bù shǎo qīguāde dòngxi lèi chī. This minority nationality grows a lot of strange things on the mountain to eat.

13. zhuanjiejie special line/field/discipline
    (See Notes on No. 10)

14. jīqi (jīqí) (yītái) machine
Unit 3, Review Dialogue

While walking along Wǎngfǔjǐng Boulevard in Běijīng, Ms. Olsen (A), an agricultural specialist from the United States, and Chén Guóqiāng (B), from the China Travel Service, stop to look at the photos and articles displayed in the building of the People's Daily. They are looking at an article about a model commune, Sījiqīng.

A: Zhèige diăn fāngh ē bu shì wǒmen yào qù cānguān nǎ?

B: Shì. Guǒ liángtiān wǒmen jiù qù.

A: Wǒ kàn, zhèige rénmín gōngshè hǎoxiǎo, yǒu yīdiǎnr tèbié ma, tāmen de shēngchǎn zhūyào shì shūcāi hé shuǐguǒ.

B: Mǐ shūode yīdiǎn yě bù cuò, zhèi jīn shì yǒu mìngde Sījiqīng Rénmín Gōngshè.

A: "Sījiqīng"?

B: Duì le, "yīnián sìjí" de "sījí," "qīng shān lǜ shuǐ" de "qīng". Mín zài Běijīng Fǎndiǎn chīde cài dābùfēn dōu shì tāmen shēngchǎn de.

A: Ōu!

B: Tāmen gōngshè yǒu sìwàn duō mǔ tǔdì, dābùfēn dōu shì càidì.

A: Cāidì de miànji zhǎn bāifēnzhī duōshǎo? Zhèr yǒu méiyòu xǐzhè?

B: Zhèr xiǎozhā ne. Cāidì zhàn liǎngwàn liǎngqīwàn mǔ, yībān duō yīdiǎn.

A: Nàme, hǎi yǒu yǐwàn bāqiān mǔ ne? Zhōngde dōu shī shènme?

B: Tāmen shūo yòng yǐwàn mǔ dǐ zhòng liǎngshí.

A: Is this one of the places we're going to visit?

B: Yes. We'll be going in a couple of days.

A: It looks to me as if this people's commune is rather special. Their production is mainly vegetables and fruits.

B: You're absolutely right. This is the famous Sījiqīng People's Commune.

A: "Sījiqīng?"

B: Yes. "Sìjì" ["Four Seasons"] as in "yīnián sìjí" ["throughout the four seasons of the year,"] and "qīng" ["green"] as in "qīng shān lǜ shuǐ" ["green hills and green water"]). Most of the food you eat at the Běijīng Hotel is produced by them.

A: Oh!

B: Their commune has over four hundred mǔ of land. Most of it is vegetable plots.

A: What percentage do the vegetable plots take up? Is it written here?

B: Yes, it is. The vegetable plots take up 22,000 mǔ, a little more than half.

A: And what about the other 18,000 mǔ? What do they grow there?

B: They say they use 10,000 mǔ to plant grain.
A: Ng. Zhūyào shēngchǎn shèmmé liángshì?

B: Dàozi, yǒu mǐngde Jīngxīdào! Kěn lái zhēr yǐnǒu, tiāntiān chǐ!

A: Āhè! Yuánlài "Jīngxīdào" shì Sījiāqīng shēngchǎnshè. Tīngshuō chǎnliàng hěn gāo ou! Múchān yǒu yīqiǎnduō jīn ba?

B: Yǒu, mǎchān zǒng zài yīqiān yīqiān yībī jīn zuòyǒu.

A: Ñg, zhèndé bù cuò. Nà lǐngwǎi bǎqiān mǔ dōu shì shuǐguǒ?

B: Shì. Tāmen gōngshède shuǐguǒ chǎnliàng yě hěn gāo.

A: Wǒ hái yǒu yīgē wèntí, quán gōngshè yǒu duōshǎo rénkǒu, yǒu duōshǎo lǎodōnglǐ?

B: Yǒu yīwàn lǐng bǎqiān hù, sīwàn sānqiānduō kǒu rén, liǎngwàn liǎngqiānduō lǎođōnglǐ, píngjūn míngjīng lǎođōnglǐ děi guān liǎngmǔ dì na!

A: Yīge rén guān liǎngmǔ dì hěn xīnǐ ma?

B: Zhōngcǎi, shǒu cǎi, xiānzǎi hǎi méi bānxia kǎo jījié, quán děi kǎo shǒu, zěnme bù xīnǐ ne?

A: Nǐ kān, tūpiànshāng yǒu bù shǎo tuōlājī, tǎmènde jīnièhù shūjīng xiāngdāng gāo ma?

B: Zhègè gōngshè xiāngdāng xiānjīn, yǒu yībānhā bāshí liǎng qīchē, dà xíāo tuōlājī sānbāi qǐshìduō tāi, kěshì zhèxīn qīchē zhùyàode gōngzuò shì bǎ cài sōng dào chénglǐ qu.

A: Ñg, wǒ dōng le, wǒ juédé zhègè gōngshè hěn yǒu tèdiǎn, nǐ zài duō tǎntàn, hǎo bu hǎo?

What grain do they mainly produce?

Rice, the famous Capital-West rice. You’ve been eating it every day since you came here.

Ah! So Sījiāqīng produces Capital-West rice. I hear that the yield is very high! The per-mu yield is over one thousand catties, isn’t it?

Yes. The per-mu yield is always approximately 1,100 catties.

Mm, that’s really quite good. So then are the remaining 8,000 mu all fruits?

Yes. Their commune has a very high fruit yield, too.

I have one more question. What’s the population of the whole commune, and how many laborers are there?

There are 10,800 households, over 43,000 people, and over 22,000 laborers. On the average, every laborer has to take care of two mu of land!

Is it very hard work for one person to take care of two mu?

At present they still don’t have the means to adopt machines. Planting and harvesting have to be done entirely by hand. It’s hard work all right.

But look, in these pictures there are lots of tractors. Their level of mechanization is pretty high!

This commune is quite advanced. They have 180 automobiles, and over 370 tractors. But the main job of these vehicles is to take the vegetables into the city.

Mm, I see. This seems to be a very distinctive commune. Could you tell me more about it?
B: 你好 a! 这个 gōngshède méige shèngchān dàduì dōu yǒu zìjǐde shèngchān shèngdīdān—shèngchān dàduì nǐ dōng bu dōng?

A: Wǒ zhīdào shèngchān dàduì, shèngchānduì, shenme de.

B: Nà hǎo, wǒmen guǎn tāmén zhěi—zhèngzhǔ zhūhái shèngchānde bānfǎ jiào zhūyuánzhū shèngchān.


B: Shi ma! Shèngchān fāzhǎnle, rénmín de shènghuò shuǐpíng cǎi nèng tígāo ma?

A: Nàme, zhězhòng zhūyuányuǎn shèngchān zài quánguó shì bu shì hěn pǔtōn ne?

B: Bù shì, quánguó dàbùfēn gōngshè zhǔyào hǎishì shèngchān liàngshí, zāi dà chéngshìde jīn jiàoqū cǎi yǒu xiǎng Sījiāng zhèiyángde gōngshè.


A: Bǐ bǐ kǎqi, nín ānpáihǎo, qǐng zǎo yídiǎnr gāosu wǒ.

---

Every production brigade of the commune has its own production priority—do you understand "production brigade?"

I know about productions brigades, production teams, and so forth.

Okay, well we call this method of organizing production of theirs specialized production.

Ah! Each production brigade has its own specialty. Great. This must be of great help in expanding production.

Sure! The people's standard of living can only be raised when production expands.

So is this kind of specialized production very common throughout the whole country?

No, most of the communes in the country still mainly produce grain. It's only in the close suburbs of big cities that one finds communes like Sījīqīng.

If I get the chance, I'd also like to visit one or two ordinary communes. Also, farming production is probably very different on the plains from that in mountainous regions. If it's possible, I'd like very much to go look into the differences.

All right. In the past few years, China's agricultural construction has been moving rapidly ahead. As an expert, your opinions can help us a great deal in our work. I'll be sure to arrange a few more visits for you.

You needn't be polite. Please let me know soon after you've made the arrangements.
Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American is looking over the selection in front of a vegetable stall in Dōngdān market in Běijīng and strikes up a conversation with the salesperson.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you’ll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

- qīngjiāo
- běn dì
- chū
- jǐ ge lìzi
- sì jì
- yīnián sì jì
- chūn jì
- qiū jì
- sì jì chāng lā
- zōng miàn jì

green pepper
this locality
to produce
to give an example
four seasons
in all four seasons of the year, all year round
spring season
fall season
green all year round
total area

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Where are green peppers grown?
2. What is the main product of most people's communes?

3. How does the salesperson explain the components of the word 石景山?

4. How much of 石景山's total area is planted to vegetables?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American who is examining several varieties of rice in the 北京 Agricultural Exhibition Center talks with a worker.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

pǐnzhòng variety
Qiānjǐndào Thousand-Catty Rice
míngcì term, expression
Cháng Jiāng the Yangtze River
Jiāngmǎn the area south of the lower reaches of the Cháng Jiāng (Yangtze River)
nóngyèqū farming region
àn shore, bank, coast
píng to be flat, to be level
Huáng Hé the Yellow River

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the chief characteristic of Capital-West Rice?
TVL, Unit 3

2. How are conditions in the Jiāngmān region suitable for the development of agriculture?

3. How does the yield of Thousand-Catty Rice compare with the average yield for grains?

4. Describe the production brigade in Shānxī that the American heard about.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

This conversation takes place during a visit by an American farm owner to the apple orchard of Nánkǒu Farm in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

nóngháng  farm
nóngmín  peasant
gōngrén  worker
yǐnián bǐ yǐnián duō  more and more every year
píngjūnshù  an average number, a mean
xiānzhī  cash
cúnkǔn  savings
dàibiǎotuán  delegation

Questions for Exercise 4

1. What is the first question the American asks the worker?

2. Who runs Nánkǒu Farm?

3. What are the differences between peasants and agricultural workers?

4. How has the income of peasants changed? What is the major cause of the change?

5. What is the American's comment about the success of China's efforts to modernize agriculture?
6. (Extra) Pretend that you are going to visit a farm around Beijing.
Make a list of questions you would like to ask the workers.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you pronounce your answers correctly.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

This dialogue takes place in front of a vegetable stall in Dōngdān market in Běijīng. An American customer (A) is looking over the selection. Here he talks with the salesperson.

A: Ài, zhèlèi qǐngjiāo hǎo dà a! Yě hěn xīnxiān, shì běndī chūhū bāf

B: Shi cóng jiāoqū lǎide.

A: Běijīng jiāoqūde rénmín gōngshè dōu zhòng shūcài ma?

B: Xiānnáide rénmín gōngshè zhùyào bāishí zhòng liàngshī, jiāoqūde gōngshè yǒu xìe dàduì zhòng shūcài, dāngrán yě yǒu zhuānyèhuàde gōngshè.

A: Zhuānyèhuà shì shènme yìsi?

B: Zěnmé shuō ne? Wǒ shīzhè de jù ge liù ba.

A: Êg, nǐ shuōshuō kan.

B: Bǐfāng shuō Sījiāng zhèlèi gōngshè.

A: "Sījiāng" shì shènme yìsi?

B: Êg, "yī èr sān sì" de "sì," "chūn- jī, qiūjī" de "jì," "qīng" jì shì "liù" de yìsi.

A: Æ! Wǒ shì shì jì chāng lǜi yìsi.

B: Duì le, jiù shì yīnwei nèige gōngshè yínmián sìjī dōu shì lǜe, wòmen cái guān ta jiào Sījiāng. Wǒ shì guān xiānjīng de gōngshè. Tāmén jiù zhòng zhēng cài!

A: Jiù zhòng cài? Æ! Duì le, duì le, suōyī guān zhèlèi gōngshè jiào zhuānyèhuà gōngshè.

B: Óu, wǒ shuōde "jiù zhòng cài" bù shì shuō bái fēnzhǐ bāi a! Jiù shì

B: They come from the suburbs.

A: Do all the people's communes in the suburbs of Běijīng grow vegetables?

B: These days most people's communes still mainly produce grain. In communes in the suburbs, some brigades grow vegetables, and, of course, there are also specialized communes.

A: What does "specialized" mean?

B: How should I explain it? I'll try and give you an example.

B: Mm, go ahead.

A: For instance, the commune Sījiāng.

B: What does "Sījiāng" mean?

A: Ah! So it means "green all year round."

B: Right. It's precisely because the commune is green all year round that we call it Sījiāng. It's an advanced commune. They grow only vegetables.

B: Only vegetables? Oh! Of course. That's why they call it a specialized commune.

B: Oh, when I said "only vegetables," I didn't mean one hundred percent! I
TVL, Unit 3

shuǐ, cài tián wèi xiān jī hěn dà, zhàn gōngshè zǒng xiān jī de běifēnzhī qī-bāshì!

mean that the area of their vegetable plots is very large. They make up seventy or eighty percent of the commune’s total area.

A: Suǒyì zhèige xiān jī gōngshè zhùyùde shěngchén shì shūcǎi!

So the main product of this commune is vegetables!

B: Duì le, yìdīn ěr dōu bù cuò! Zhèige dà qīngjiāo jiǔ shì cóng nàr lái de. Duì mǎi jīge bāi!

Right, absolutely correct. These big green peppers are from there. Buy a bunch of them!

A: Hāo, wǒ mǎi yījīn.

Okay, I’ll take one catty.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

In the Běijīng Agricultural Exhibition Center, an American (A) is examining several varieties of rice. He talks with a worker from the Center (B).

A: Nǐmendē dàozì pízhōng hěn duō ma!

You have so many varieties of rice!

B: Pízhōng shì bù shǎo, chǎnliàng bǐ jīgè gāo de shì zhè shìjīzhāng.

Yes, there are a lot of varieties. The ones with the highest yields are these ten or so here.

A: Tāmendē chǎnliàng zài zhèr yǒu měiyǒu xīzhē?

Are their yields written down here?

B: Xǐzhē ne! Nǐn xiǎnzài kāndào de shì Jǐngdōu, móuchǎn yītiān yǐběi jīn zuǒyòu.

Yes. What you’re looking at now is Capital-West Rice. It has a per-mu yield of approximately 1,100 catties.

A: Ò, zhè jiǔ shì Qiānjǐndǎo yǐzhōng le.

Oh, this is one kind of Thousand-Catty Rice.


Mr. Capital-West Rice is distinguished for being good to eat. The term Thousand-Catty Rice was first used in Jiāngnán [the area south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze River]. Today the yield of rice in that area is still comparatively high.

A: Duì, Jiāngnán duōbānshì shí píng-yuán, měiyǒu shènme shāndī, shuǐ yǒu fāngbiàn, nōngyè shēngchén fāzhǎnqílái bǐjīgè yǒu tiāojīān.

Of course. Jiāngnán is mostly flatlands. There are hardly any hills. Water is convenient, too. The conditions are better for the development of agriculture.

B: Jǐù shì ma! Suǒyǐ Jiāngnán yǐzhī shì wǒ guǒ zhōngyàode nónɡyènǚ.

Exactly! That’s why Jiāngnán has always been an important agricultural region of our country.
A: Búguó, wǒ xiǎng xiān zài Huáng Hé liánhède nónghì shèngchān qìng-kuāng yě bù cuò le. Tíngshuō, xiānzhài liàngshì měimí pingjùn chǎnliáng dōu zài sì—wǔbāi jīn zuògòu le.

B: Chábuduō shì shèiyáng. Wǒ xiǎng zài guò jīnián qìngkuàng hui gèng hǎo yīxiē.

A: Shídúnián qián wǒ tīngshuōguo Shānxī yìge shèngchān dàduō rén chábuduō quān shì shāndì, méiyou jīmù dì shì píngdě, kāshi tāmén měitián yě mǎi gěi guójì bù shǎo de lǐàngshì ne!

B: Xiānzhài, zhèiyàngdàduō gōng- shè bù shǎo le. Cháng Jiāng, Jiāngnán, Huáng Hé shèng xià nár dōu yǒu a?

A: Ê, bù cuò bù cuò, Zhōngguóde nónghì dà yǒu xīwàng!

But I think that now agricultural production is quite good on both sides of the Yellow River. I hear that the average per—mu yield of grain is now around four or five hundred catties.

That's about the way it is. And I think that in another few years the situation will be even better.

Ten or so years ago I heard about a production brigade in Shānxī that was almost all on hilly land. There were only a few mu of flat land, but they still sold a lot of grain to the state every year.

These days, there are a lot of brigades and communes like that. They're everywhere—the Yangtze River, Jiāngnán, and the Yellow River area.

Mm, great, great. China's agriculture has a great future!

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

An American farm owner (A) is visiting Běijīng's Nánkǒu Farm. In the apple orchard, he talks with a responsible person from the farm (C).

C: Wòmén de píngguǒ zěnmeyàng? Hái kěyī chī ba?

A: Ê, zhēn bù cuò, hěn tián, hěn hǎo chī.

C: Lái, zài chī yí ge!

A: Ó, bù néng zài chī le, wòmén jiù liáo liáo tīngha ba!

C: Hǎo a! Wǒ xiǎng liáo shěnme?

A: Yímén nónghéng zìzhì hé rénmín gōngshè yǒu hěn dà de qūbì ma?


How are our apples? Not too bad, are they?

Mm, they're really good. Very sweet. Delicious.

Here, have another!

Oh, I can't eat any more. Let's just chat!

Sure! What would you like to talk about?

Is there a big difference between the organization of your farm and that of a commune?

Yes. The farm is run by the state. The people who work on the farm aren't ordinary peasants, they're agricultural workers.
A: 0. Nàmè nóngyè gōngrén shì ná zhènggú gōngzǐde. Tāmén hē nóngmín hái yǒu shēnmé bù yǐyāngde méiyóu?

B: Shì me?

C: Mǎiyìyou shēnmé. Tāmendé gōngzuò shì yǐyāngde, dōu shì gāo nòngyè shēngchǎn.

A: Nóngyè gōngrén dǎo shǒurù bǐ nóngmín duō ba?

B: Bù yǐdīng. Xiànzǎi yǒu zìyóu shìchǎng, yīzhōng nóngmín de shǒurù dōu bǐ yǐqǐán duōduō le.

C: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

A: Nàmè xiànzǎi píngjūn měige lǎodònglè yǐnǐn kěyǐ yǒu duōshǎo xiānjīn shǒurù?


A: Zhēnmé huì mǎiyìyou xiānjīn shǒurù ne?

C: Yǐnǐn jiù nēng fēn dìnìu liánghuì, nà rào yǒu shēnmé xiānjīn a!

A: Xiànzǎi ne?

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!

B: Shì de. Tāmén qǐngkuǎng huǒduō le, chūle zhōng liàngshì yīwéi, tāmén yě yǒu le shūcāi, suǐguǒ, shēnméde, shǒurù yǐnǐn bǐ yǐnián duō a!
C: Qùnián tāmen jiē fēnle bā-jībāi-kuài qián, hǎi yǒu yīge hǎizì shàngle dàxuě. Nǐ kān zěnmeyàng a?

A: Ǎng, shì bāodeduō le, kěshì wèishénme gǎibiàn zhèměi dà ne?

C: Zhèǐ jíu shì xiànzài zhèngfǔ de jīngjí zhèngcè hǎo a! Jīngjí zhèngcè gǎibiànle, nóngcūnle shènghuó jiù hǎo le! Xiànzài, nèige gōngshè yǒu yībān duō yídiǎnrde hūr zài yīnghǎngli yǒu cúnkūn. Nǐ kān, nà bù shì bāodeduō le ma?

A: Nǐn shuō xiāng nèige gōngshè nèi-yuán de qìngxìng zài quánguǒ shì bu shì bān pūbiàn ne?

C: Hǎn pūbiàn.... Nǐmen zhèige nóngyè zhǔnjià dāibǐkětuān zǒu le nàme duō dǐfang, fānle nàme duō nóngchǎng, gōngshè, nǐn juède zěnmeyàng ne?

A: Wǒmen xiǎng zhèi jīnlián zhōngguó nóngyè de xiāndàihuà shì gāode bù cuò.

B: Shì ma! Wǒ gāngcái shuōde nèige gōngshè yě mǎi le bù shǎo tuōlǐ fēn. Tīngshuō xiànzài nèige dàduì shìwǔ tāi, tāmen shuō tāmen hǎi xiǎng duō mǎi jītái na!

A: Hǎo a! Hǎo a!

C: Duì le, wǒmen nóngchǎng dà měnkǒu yǒu hǎo duō tǔpiàn, lǐbian yě yǒu nèige gōngshède, wǒ dāi nǐmen kān kān qu!

A: Hǎo! Zǒu!

C: Last year their allotment was eight or nine hundred dollars, and one of their children started college. What do you think of that?

A: Mm, that is much better. But why has the change been so great?

C: That's because now the economic policy of the government is good. Since the economic policy changed, life in rural areas has been good. In that commune now a little over half of the households have bank savings. See, isn't that much better?

A: Would you say that that commune's situation is very common throughout the country?

C: Yes, it's very common.... Now that your delegation of agricultural specialists has been to so many places and seen so many farms and communes, what are your opinions?

A: We think that in the past few years, the modernization of China's agriculture has come along very well.

B: You bet! That commune that I just mentioned has bought a lot of tractors. I hear that each brigade now has fifteen tractors, and they want to buy even more!

A: Great, great!

C: Oh--at the front gate of our farm, there are a lot of pictures, including some of that commune. I'll take you to see them!

A: Okay! Let's go!
Unit 4, Reference List

1. A: Wànlǐ Chángchéng zhēn yǒu yīnwàn lǐ cháng ma?
   B: Chángchéng jīngguō lè hǎo, yīgòng yǒu yīwàn èrqiān lǐ cháng.
   Is the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Lǐ really ten thousand Lǐ long?
The Great Wall goes through many provinces and is altogether twelve thousand Lǐ long.

   B: Shì, cóng Qínzhāo dào xiànzài yǐzhī zài xiū.
   I've heard that the Great Wall has been repaired a great many times.
   Yes, from the Qín Dynasty up until now, there have been repairs all along.

3. A: Bàdálingzàngde Chángchéng bù shì Qínzhāo jiànzhùde.
   B: Ñé, nǐ shuōde duì, shì Míngcháozhōngxīn jiànzhùde.
   It seems to me that the Great Wall at Bàdáling wasn't built during the Qín Dynasty.
   Mm, you're right. It was rebuilt from scratch during the Míng Dynasty.

   B: Nà shì yǐnweí dìxíng bāo.
   Throughout history Běijīng has been used as a capital so many times.
   That's because the terrain is good.

   This kind of terrain makes it easier to guard against invasion from the north.

6. A: Nǐmen yǒu lǐ yǐnzhú jīhùdà yǒu máiyíu Shísānlíng?
   B: Wǒ zhīdào nǐmen jiānzhù gōngyùshī dū Shísānlíngde dìxíng gòngtiān hěn yǒu xíng-qu, wǒmen hòutiān qù.
   Does your sightseeing plan include the Thirteen Tombs?
   I know that all of you in architecture and structural engineering are very interested in the underground palaces at the Thirteen Tombs. We'll go the day after tomorrow.
7. A: Chīlè gādà Zhōngguó jiānzhù yìxiáng, nǐmen hái xiāng qù kàn shénme?

What would you like to go see in addition to ancient Chinese architectural art?

B: Tíngshuō nǐ yìge jiāotáng yě kāi mén le. Wǒmen xiāng qù kǎnkan.

I've heard that there are also some churches which have opened. We would like to go see them.

8. A: Wǒ yào dào Tiān'ānmén qù kǎnkan. Zuò jīlù gōnggòng qīchē hǎo?

I want to go see the Gate of Heavenly Peace. What bus should I take?

B: Xīngqītiān qíchē kě yǐ le. Nǐ zuì hǎo zōuzhe qù.

It's Sunday and buses are really crowded. It would be best to walk.


I really admire the Ten Great Structures you've built since liberation.

B: Nǐn tài kèqí le.

You're too polite."

10. A: Wǒmen yǐjīng jùdāng chīlè fàn yǐhòu qù mǎi dōngxī.

We've already decided that after we eat we're going shopping.

B: Hǎo. Cóng zhèr chuāngguǒ qīngchén jǐōu yǒu shāngdiàn le.

Okay, from here cross through the square and there are some stores.

11. A: Gǔgōng yǐtiān kǎndéwàn kānbúwán?

Can you see all of the Imperial Palace in one day?!

B: Yǐtiān nàr kǎndéwàn!

How could you see it all in one day?


Whoever goes to China will always think of it.

13. cháo dǎi
dynasty

14. The Major Chinese Dynasties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dynasty</th>
<th>Time Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Qīng</td>
<td>1644-1911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Míng</td>
<td>1368-1644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuán</td>
<td>1271-1368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jīn</td>
<td>1115-1234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lǐgào</td>
<td>916-1125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sòng</td>
<td>960-1297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tánɡ</td>
<td>618-907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sūf</td>
<td>581-618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hán</td>
<td>206 B.C.-A.D. 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qín</td>
<td>221 B.C.-207 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōu</td>
<td>c. 11th century-256 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shānɡ</td>
<td>c. 16th-11th century B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xià</td>
<td>c. 21st-16th century B.C.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"He really is."
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bádáyìng (Bádáyìng)</th>
<th>(mountain northwest of Běijīng, site of a famous section of the Great Wall)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-cháo</td>
<td>dynasty (bound form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎodài</td>
<td>dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chóngxin</td>
<td>again, anew, afresh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuāngguō</td>
<td>to pass, to cross</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dìxíng</td>
<td>topography, terrain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fángbèi</td>
<td>to take precautions against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāi</td>
<td>to build (buildings); to cover palace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngdiàn</td>
<td>worker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngzuòzhē</td>
<td>(public) square</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǎngchǎng</td>
<td>ancient times, antiquity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǔdài</td>
<td>Former Imperial Palace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gùgōng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ji</td>
<td>to be crowded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiànzhū (-zhū, -zhu)</td>
<td>to build, to construct; structure church, cathedral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiāotáng</td>
<td>to decide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juédìng</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kě</td>
<td>indeed, certainly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lǐ</td>
<td>lǐ, a unit of length (1/2 km.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Míngcháo</td>
<td>(name of a dynasty, 1368–1644)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ōu zhōu</td>
<td>Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qiánmén</td>
<td>(a gate in Běijīng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qíncháo</td>
<td>(name of a dynasty, 221–207 B.C.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qín lū</td>
<td>to invade; aggression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shēng</td>
<td>province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shi sān líng</td>
<td>the Thirteen Tombs (Míng Tombs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shūdū</td>
<td>capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiān'ānmén</td>
<td>the Gate of Heavenly Peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiān Tān</td>
<td>the Temple of Heaven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wānlǐ Chāngchéng</td>
<td>the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Lǐ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīnshāng</td>
<td>to appreciate/enjoy/admire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīū</td>
<td>to build, to construct (roads, reservoirs, etc.); to repair; to trim, prune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yīhéyuán (Yǐ-)</td>
<td>the Summer Palace (in Běijīng)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīshū</td>
<td>art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yōulán</td>
<td>to sightsee, to tour, to visit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 4, Reference Notes

1. A: Wànli Chángchéng zhēn yǒu yìwàn lǐ cháng ma?  
   Is the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Lǐ really ten thousand lǐ long?

   B: Chángchéng jìngguān bāo jǐ ge shēng, yīgòng yǒu yìwàn èrqiān lǐ cháng.  
   The Great Wall goes through many provinces and is altogether twelve thousand lǐ long.

Notes on No. 1

lǐ: A Chinese unit of length, equal to one-half kilometer. Lǐ is often used to measure the noun lù ("road," but here meaning simply "walking or riding distance");

Cōng nǐ jiā dào xuéxiào yǒu jǐ lǐ lù?  
How many lǐ is it from your house to the school?

The unit of distance lǐ is often used in rural areas, but rarely in the city.

Wànli Chángchéng: You learned Chángchéng, "the Great Wall," in the Meeting module. The descriptive term Wànli Chángchéng comes from the fact that the wall is over twelve thousand lǐ in total length (approximately 6,700 kilometers).

yǒu yìwàn lǐ cháng: "is ten thousand lǐ long" Use the verb yǒu (not shì) in sentences telling or asking length, height, area, time, age, etc. In such sentences, yǒu has the special meaning "to attain, to come up to (a certain level)."

| Cōng zhèr dào huǒchēzhàn : yǒu duō yuǎn? | "How far is it from here to the train station?"
| Chābuduō : yǒu yǐlǐ lù. | "It's about one lǐ."
| NYde báizi : yǒu duō dà? | "How old is your child?"
| Tā : yǒu sānsī shí duō. | "He is over three years old."
| Wǒ : yǒu duō gāo? | "How tall are you?"
| Shānghǎi lǐ : yǐmí bā. | "I'm one meter eighty (cm)."
| Shānghǎi lǐ : zhī liǎngge yuè. | "Winter in Shānghǎi is only two months (long)."

The negative of such sentences uses méiyǒu:

A: Dào huǒchēzhàn zhēn yǒu wŭlǐ lù ma?  
   Is it really five lǐ to the train station?

B: Méiyǒu wŭlǐ, hěn jīn.  
   No, it isn't. It's very close.

Tā méiyǒu wūshísùn, tā cái sīshíjī.  
   He isn't (as old as) fifty years old; he's only forty-something.
jingguo le běnqì gōng chǎng: "goes through many provinces" This sentence illustrates well that completion -le is completely different from English past tense. Even with completion -le, the verb still means "goes through," not "went through." The completion of an event in the past can result in a present state (for example, the Great Wall was built in the past and is still standing), and so -le must sometimes be translated into English with the present tense. Other examples:

Wǒ xiänzài dōngqi é tā wéishénme nǎi gēn tā jíshǐn.  
Now I understand why he didn’t marry her.

Wǒ dàijié yānjiāng, nǐ dōu bù rènshí wǒ le, shì ma?  
You don’t recognize me with glasses on, eh? (I am wearing glasses.)

Zhèiběn shēng jièshè wò Méiguó de zhèngzhì qǐngkuāng.  
This book introduces the American political situation.

shěng: "province" Shěng takes the counter -ge, or is sometimes used without a counter.

Zhōngguó yīgōng yǒu èrshíèrge shěng.  
China has twenty-two provinces altogether.

2. A: Tíngshūō Wànli Chǎngchéng xiūguò hǎojǐ le.  
I’ve heard that the Great Wall has been repaired a great many times.

B: Shì, cóng Qíncháo dào xiănzài yīzhí zài xiū.  
Yes, from the Qin Dynasty up until now, there have been repairs all along.

Notes on No. 2

xiū: "to repair" roads, structures, cars, radios, shoes, etc. Also, "to trim" hair, fingernails, or "to prune" trees, shrubbery, etc. Also, "to build, to construct" reservoirs, railroads, roads, irrigation ditches, etc.

xiūguò hǎo jiě le: "has been repaired a great many times" The -le at the end of the sentence adds on the meaning "so far." Here are other examples of the pattern . . . -guo . . . -le:

Zhègè diànyīng tā xiūguò liàngcǐ le, hǎi bù zhīdào zěnme hū shì.  
He has seen this movie twice, and he still doesn’t know what it’s all about.

Tā xiūguò liàngcǐ le, dōu bù xīng.  
He has taken the exam twice, but didn’t make it either time.

Qíncháo: "the Qin Dynasty" (221-207 B.C.)
TVL, Unit 4

vìchí shí xiū: Literally, "all-along in-process-of repair," i.e., "it has been being repaired all along."

3. A: Bēidálingshangde Chángchéng hǎoxiāng bù shì Qínchéng jiānzhùde.
   It seems to me that [the section of] the Great Wall at Bēidáling wasn't built during the Qín Dynasty.

   B: Nǐ shuōde duì, shì Míng-chéng chōngxīn jiānzhùde. Mm, you're right. It was rebuilt from scratch during the Míng Dynasty.

Notes on No. 3

Bēidáling: A mountain seventy-five kilometers northwest of Běijīng, over which passes a section of the Great Wall dating from the Míng Dynasty (1368–1644). This is the usual spot to which tourists are taken to see the Great Wall. (Some people pronounce this with different tones: Bēidálīng.)

hǎoxiāng: "to seem," but here meaning "it seems to me," as in

Wǒ hǎoxiāng zài nár jiànguō zhèige rén. It seems to me I've seen this man somewhere before.

Nǐ hǎoxiāng gāosūguō wǒ zhèi–jiān shì. It seems to me you've told me this before.

jiānzhù: As a verb, "to build, to construct":

Zhèige dālóu shì něiníán jiānzhùde? When was this building constructed?

As a noun, "a structure" or "architecture":

Zhèi shì Qínchéngde jiānzhù. This is a structure from the Qín Dynasty.

Tā shì xué jiānzhùde. He studied architecture.

chōngxīn: "again, afresh, anew"

Zhèihào pánzìwǎn xīde bù gǎnjīng, qǐng nǐ chōngxīn xī yīcì. These dishes were not washed clean; please wash them again.

Chōngxīn is often followed by zài, "again":

Zuòde bù hǎode huài, chōngxīn zài zuò. If (we) don't do it well, we'll do it all over again.
TVL, Unit 4

4. A: Zài lǐshǐ shàng yǒu zhèmé duō cí yòng Běijīng zuò shǒu duì. Throughout history Bēijīng has been used as a capital so many times.

B: Nà shì yīn wèi dīxíng hǎo. That's because the terrain is good.

Notes on No. 4

zài lǐshǐ shàng: "in history, down through history" Chinese often uses -shàng, "on," where English would use "in," especially for the meaning "in such-and-such a field or area": zài jīng shì hǎo, "in economy, economically"; zài xué xí shàng, "in (one's) studies"; zài shēng chǎn shàng, "in production"; and, of course, bàozhī shàng, "in the newspaper," etc.

yòng...zuò...: "to use...as..."

Tā yòng tāmen jià de kē tīng zuò bāngōngshì. He uses their living room as an office.

5. A: Zhèzhōng dīxíng bǐ jiǔ bǐng běì fāng běi běifāng lǎi de qín lùè. This kind of terrain makes it easier to guard against invasion from the north.

Notes on No. 5

qín lùè: As a verb, "to invade":

Sūlìán wèishénme qín lùè Āfǔhàn? Why did the Soviet Union invade Afghanistan?

As a noun, "invasion" or "aggression":

Wǒmen bǐxū fāngbèi Sūlìándé qín lùè. We must guard against Soviet aggression.

běi fāng lǎi de: "coming from the north" The word cóng, "from," is often omitted from phrases such as the following:

A: Nèige xuéxiào de Zhōngguó xuéshēng dōu shì Táiwān lǎi de ma? Are the Chinese students in that school all from Taiwan?

B: Bù shì, yě yǒu dàlù lái de. No, there are also some from the mainland.

Cóng Shānghǎi qù Xīběi zhūde rén hěn duō, Běijīng qùde yě yǒu. There are many people who have gone to live in the Northwest from Shānghǎi, and there are also some who have gone there from Běijīng.

Rén shì hǒuzi biān de. Man came ("changed") from the monkey.
6. A: Nǐmen yóulǎn jīnghuà yǒu méiyǒu Shíshānlǐng?
B: Wǒ zhīdào nǐmen jiānzhù gōngzuòzhě duì Shíshānlǐng de dìxī gōngdiàn hǎn yǒu xǐng-qū, wǒmén hòutiān qù.

Does your sightseeing plan include the Thirteen Tombs?
I know that all of you in architecture and structural engineering are very interested in the underground palaces at the Thirteen Tombs. We'll go the day after tomorrow.

Notes on No. 6

yóulǎn: "to sightsee," "to tour"

Dào Běijīngde wáiguò rén dōu xiǎng qù Shíshānlǐng yóulǎn.

Foreigners who go to Běijīng all want to go to the Thirteen Tombs to sightsee.

Dào Chángchéng qùde yóulǎnchē měitiān sìbān.

There are four tour buses to the Great Wall every day.

Shíshānlǐng: "the Thirteen Tombs," also called "the Míng Tombs," because they date from the Míng Dynasty. These are located outside of Běijīng.

gōngzuòzhě: "worker" in a particular field, e.g., jiàoyú gōngzuòzhě, "educational worker," xīnwén gōngzuòzhě, "journalist," yǔyán gōngzuòzhě, "language worker." Such terms are PRC usage, sometimes created to replace titles with elitist connotations.

Do not confuse this with the general term for "worker," gōngrén, which will be introduced in Unit 6.

7. A: Chúle gǔdài Zhōngguó jiānzhù yǐshū yǐwèi, nǐmen hěi xiāng qù kān shénmé?
B: Tíngshuō yǒu jīge jǐshùtáng yǒu kāi mén le, wǒmén xiāng qù kānkàn.

What would you like to go see in addition to ancient Chinese architectural art?
I've heard that there are some churches which have reopened. We would like to go see them.

Notes on No. 7

gǔdài: "ancient," the opposite of xiàndài. Gǔ-, "ancient," is used mainly in compound words:

Běijīng shì yīge gǔchéng.
Běijīng is an ancient city.

Gǔrén yǒu yǐjū huà, "Jiāozhě bǐ bái."
The ancients had a saying, "Pride goeth before the fall."

Zài gǔshíhòu zhějīng guójì àde wēnhuà yǐjīng hěn fādá le.
This country's culture was already well developed in ancient times.

Gǔdài is also used as a noun meaning "ancient times, antiquity."
yīshū: "art," meaning either "the arts" or "skill". Yīshùjiā is an "artist."

Wǒ tīngshuō nǐ zài zhèr xué yīshū, nǐ shì xué xiàndài yīshū hǎishì gǔdài yīshū?

I understand you study art here; do you study modern art or ancient art?

Jiāo shū shì yīzhòng yīshū. Teaching is an art.

Jīlòtāng: "church," literally, "religion-hall"

8. A: Wǒ yào dào Tiān'ānmén qù kàn kàn. Zuǒ jiǔ gōnggōng qǐchē hǎo?

B: Xīngqītiān qǐchē kě jǐ le. Nǐ zúi hǎo zǒuzhe qù. I want to go see the Gate of Heavenly Peace. What bus should I take?

It's Sunday and buses are really crowded. It would be best to walk.

Notes on No. 8

kě: Notice that kě, "indeed, certainly, really," is often accompanied by le at the end of the sentence:

Wǒ xiànzài zài kàn tā zúi xīndexū, kě yǒu yīsī le. I'm reading his latest book now. It's really interesting.


B: Nǐn tài kāqǐ le. You're too polite.

Notes on No. 9

gāi: "to build," only used for buildings. (Another common use of this word is as the verb "to cover," which was the original meaning.)

Zhège fángzi gāi lǐng duōshǎo nián le? How old is this house/building? (lit., "How many years has it been since this house was built?")

Shí Dà Jiānzhǔ: The "Ten Great Structures" in Běijīng were designed and built in the 1950s by the Chinese themselves. The authorities wanted to modernize the layout of the capital and at the same time to commemorate the revolutionary victory and its heroes. The architectural styles include Western as well as traditional Chinese. The buildings are as follows: Běijīng Railroad Station, Museum of Art, Museum of History, Great Hall of the People, Revolutionary Military Museum, Telegraph Building, Nationalities Cultural Palace, Agricultural Exhibition Hall, Workers Stadium, and the Monument to the People’s Heroes.
10. A: Wǒmen yǐjīng juédìng chīle
rèn yǐhòu qù mǎi dōngxī.

B: Hǎo. Chōng zhèr chuānguò
guāngchǎng jiù yǒu shāng-
diàn le.

We've already decided that after we
eat we're going shopping.

Okay, from here cross through the
square and there are some stores.

Notes on No. 10

juédìng: "to decide" a course of action, or a "decision"

Tāmen juédìng yào bān dào Niǔ
Yuè qù zhù le.

They decided to move to New York.

Wǒ juédìng míngtiān zài zuò
zhèjiān shǐ.

I've decided not to do this
until tomorrow.

Wǒ juédìng qù le.

I've decided to go. (Note that -le
is not attached to juédìng here
even though "decided" is a completed
action. The verb which follows
juédìng prevents this.)

Wǒ yào hé Huáshāngdùn fāngmiàn
shāngliang yǐxí tài nǐng
zuò juédìng.

I have to discuss this with Washington
before I can make a decision.

chuānguò: "to cross through"

Chōng zhèr chuānguòqu jiù dào
le.

We just cross through here and
then we're there.

guāngchǎng: "square" in a city (the literal meaning is "wide-field")

11. A: Gǔgōng yītiān kànđēwán
kānbūwàn?

B: Yītiān nǎr kànđēwán!

Can you see all of the Imperial Palace
in one day?

How could you see it all in one day?!

Notes on No. 11

Gǔgōng: The full name is Gǔgōng Bówùyuàn, "the Former Imperial Palace
Museum." This was the palace of the ruling families of the Míng and Qīng
dynasties. It is located in the center of Běijīng. In conversation it is
usually referred to simply as the Gǔgōng (literally, "Former-palace").

kànđēwán kānbūwàn?: "can (one) finish seeing (it)?" This is the
compound verb of result kěrú, "finish seeing," with the syllables -de- and
-bu- inserted between the action and the result. Notice that in the question
form, the affirmative choice is given first and the negative choice second,
just as in simple questions like qù bù qù (which means qù bái shì bù qù). In
some varieties of Standard Chinese, the question form of verbs like kànđēwán
follows the pattern Action bu Action-de-Result: Kàn bu kândeván? This pattern is increasingly common.

Gùgōng yìtiān kândeván kānbùwán?: Note the placement of the time expression yìtiān, "one day," BEFORE the verb. Expressions telling that something is done WITHIN a certain period of time (usually translated as "in" a certain period) come BEFORE the verb. Other examples:

Nǐ yìtiān néng huìlái ma? Can you get back in one day?
Méi wèntī, bān tiān jiù huìlái
le.

Wǒ yìhuìr yào chūqu. I'll be going out in a while.

Tā yì ge zhōngtòu jiù xuéhuì le. He learned it in just an hour.

Wǒ jiànggē yuè qù yīcì. I go once in two months.

nár: The word for "where" is used here to make a rhetorical question (one to which no answer is expected) implying the negative of what it says. Other examples:

Nár nǐ nà méi róngyī! Since when is it that easy! (It
nǐ wǒ shì dà cǐ yì jìng jiēhūn
le! already married! (i.e., I had no
way of knowing)

12. A: Shéi qūguò Zhōngguó, shéi jiù huì xiǎngzhe ta. Whoever goes to China will always
think of it.

Notes on No. 12

shéi...shéi jiù...: "whoever..." You can use an interrogative pronoun--
shéi, shénme, pèi ge, zènme, náli, shénme shíhòu, duōshǎo, etc.--in a dependent
clause and then repeat it in the main clause to get meanings like "whoever,"
"whatever," "however," "wherever," "whenever," "however much," etc. The adverb
jiù, "then," is often used in the main clause.

Nǐ xūyào shénme, wǒ jiù gěi
nǐ shénme.

Náli duì nǐ zuì fāngbiān wǒmen
jiù zài náli jiān miàn.

Shéi xiǎng qù, shéi jiù qù. Whoever wants to go, goes.

*Remember: Time expressions referring to POINTS in time, including ones like
"in (by the end of) two days," go BEFORE; those describing the CONTINUATION
of time go AFTER. (Review the note on placement of time phrases in the
Meeting module, Unit 1, Notes on No. 6.)
TVL, Unit 4

Here are some examples in which jiù is not used:

NY āi zěnmeyàng zěnmeyàng. Do whatever you like.
NY shénme shíhou fāngbian, shénme shíhou lái. Come whenever it's convenient for you.
Zài Tāiwān, xiǎngjiào zǒngshì yǒu; yào duōshǎo, yǒu duōshǎo. They always have bananas in Taiwan; there are as many as one could want (i.e., there are plenty).

xiǎngzhe: "be thinking of, have on one's mind" -zhe on the end of an action verb like xiǎng shows the prolonging of the action over a period of time. Compare these examples:

Bié zhànzhe, zuòxì ba! Don't stay standing; sit down!
NY tīngzhe! Listen!
NY mānmān chī, wǒ dāngzhe nǐ. Take your time eating; I'll wait for you.
Wǒ zài zhèr kānzhe ta, nǐ qù jiào liàng jiǔhúchē. I'll stay here and watch him; you go call an ambulance.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY

13. chándài dynasty

Note on No. 13

chándài: The bound form -cháo must be preceded by a name (as in Qíncháo, "the Qin Dynasty"). Chándài can be used alone, as in Zhèige gōngdiàn shì zài něige chándài jiānzhùde? "In which dynasty was this palace constructed?"
An American architect, John Bernacki, is attending a joint Sino-American conference on architecture in Beijing. During the conference, he has made the acquaintance of a certain Liú Yüwèn of the Chinese Institute of Architecture. They had the chance to talk a bit when Liú accompanied a delegation of American architects around the city to visit several ancient buildings.

One evening toward the end of the conference, Bernacki is having coffee in the dining room of the Beijing Hotel. On his table he has spread out a tourist map of Beijing and a relief map of China, and is studying them intently. Just then, Liú Yüwèn comes over to his table carrying a cup of coffee.

L: Jīntiān cānguānle Gōnggōng hái bù gōu lèi ma? Hái zài zhèr kǎn dītú ne!

B: À! Shì nǐ ya? Lǎi lái lái, zài zhèr zuò yìhuīr. Nǐ hē shéngme? Kāfēi?

L: Ng, shì kāfēi. Wǒ zài Déguó shìhòu hēchēng xīguàn le.

B: Duī le. Wǒ zānme huì wàngle nǐ shì zài Déguó xuéde jiānzhu. Huì guó zhèmé duō nián, měiyīu zài qū- guó Ōuzhōu?

L: Yǒu qūguó yǐcì, nèi shì qījǐ- niàn, zhècì bǐ shàngcì duō zōule yīge dīfāng.

B: Shéi qūguó Ōuzhōu, shéi jí ni huì xiàngzhe ta. Jiǔ xiàng Zhōngguó yǐyàng, lǎigōng Zhōngguóde rén, bù guān shéngme shìhòu, zǒng hái huì xiàngzhe ta.

L: Shì a....Gāngcái wǒ lái de shì- hou, nǐ hàoxiǎng zài yānjīū shén- me?

B: Méi shénme, wǒ zài xiāng, Bēijīng- de dīxīng hé ná Bēijīng zuò shǒudū yǒu diānr guānxì.
L: Nǐ shuōde duì, Běijīng zài Huá-běi Píngyuán zuì běibiàn, xīběi kāo shān, dōng, nán shì píngyuán.

B: Zhēizhòng dīxíng ràng rén gānjué bījiǎo róngyì fāngbēi běifāng lái dé qīnliú.

L: Tèbié shì yǒu Chángchéng yīhū, gēng róngyì fāngbēi.

B: Tīngshuō Chángchéng xiūguo bù zhídào duōshǎo cì le.

L: Cóng Qíncháozào dào xiànzǎi, Chángchéng yízhī zài xiū, wǒmen děi jíde bù guān shènmé shìhou wǒmen dōu děi xiǎoxīn běifāng lái dé qīnliú!

B: Nǐ zhěn yǒu yīsi. Duì le, wǒ xiǎng wǒmen qiànshān qù kānguò méi duǎn Chángchéng hǎoxiàng bù shì Qíncháozào jiànzhù?


B: "Wǎnlì Chángchéng" zhěn yǒu yīwàn lǐ cháng mā?

L: Yǒu, Chángchéng jīngguó qié shēng, yígōng yǒu yīwàn èrqiān lǐ cháng.

B: Chúle Chángchéng yīwèi, wǒmān jīgè jiānzhú gōngzuòzhè dui Shìsān-lǐngde dīxiá gōngdiàn yè hěn yǒu xīngqu.

L: Tándao Zhōngguó gǔdài jiānzhú yíshū, nǐ qùguò Tìántán ma? Nǐmén-de yǒulán jǐhuālǐ yǒu réiyòu Tìántán?

That's right. Běijīng is in the northernmost part of the North China Plain. On the northwest it is bordered by mountains; to the east and south there are flatlands.

This kind of topography made people feel as if it were easier to guard against invasions from the north.

Especially after the Great Wall was built, it was even easier to guard against [invasions].

I understand the Great Wall has been repaired I-don't-know how many times.

From the Qín dynasty down to the present the Great Wall has been under repair all along. We must remember that no matter when, we must always beware of invasion from the north!

You're such a card. Oh yes—it seems to me that the section of the Great Wall we went to see the day before yesterday wasn't built during the Qín dynasty, was it?

Mm, it was rebuilt in the Míng Dynasty. The Qín Dynasty Great Wall is over two hundred lǐ north of Bādálīng. So the Great Wall that foreign friends who come to sightsee in China usually see isn't the oldest section.

Is the "Great Wall of Ten Thousand Lǐ" really ten thousand lǐ long?

Yes. The Great Wall passes through seven provinces and altogether is 12,000 lǐ long.

Besides the Great Wall, we building workers are also very interested in the underground palaces of the Thirteen Tombs.

Speaking of ancient Chinese architectural art, have you been to the Temple of Heaven? Is that on your touring schedule?
B: 0, dui le, Tiāntán! Wǒ xiāng-qǐlái le, tīngshuō Tiāntán gāide hén tèbù. Kēshí, bù zhídào wèishenme, wǒmén de yǒulùn jīhuàlǐ hàoxiǎng mèiyǒu.


B: Xīngqìtiān zǐjǐ qù! Hǎo jīhuà! Nǐde xiānsheng, hǎizi, dōu kěyǐ lái ma?

L: Dāgāi kěyǐ. Wǒ kǎi mén hě wòde dà ērzǐ dōu shì gāo jiànzhùde, tàmen kěyǐ gěi wǒ hāohǎo jíshāo yīxià Tiāntán de jiànzhu tèdiǎn.

B: Wǒmén zhěnme qù ne?

L: Nǐ xiāng bù xiāng zǒuyīzǒu lù a?

B: Kěyǐ a! Zài shūō, wǒ xiāng Xīngqìtiān de gōnggōng qǐchē dài dāgāi xiāngdāng jī.

L: Ñè. Wǒmén cóng Běijīng Fǎndiǎn zǒu dào Tiān'ānmén, ránhòu chuāngguō guāngchǎng, bù yuǎn jǐ shì Tiāntán le.

B: Hǎo, jǐ zhēnméi juédìng le. Búguō, bù zhídào Tiāntán yǒu duō dà? Bāntiān kànèwǎn ma?

L: Tiāntán bǐ Yīnhuá xuēduō duō, zhùyuè de jiànzhu jiǔ yǒu liǎngbù-rén. Bāntiān dāgāi kěyǐ kànwǎn. Zhěnme, Xīngqìtiān nǐ hái yǒu bìde shì ma?

B: Xīngqìtiān xiàwǔ yǒu rèn qǐng women chí fàn. Bù hǎo yìsī bù qù, kēshí xīnshǎng jiànzhu yíshù, nà kě shì yàoqiándì shìr, bāntiān dāgāi bù gōu!

Oh, yes—the Temple of Heaven. That reminds me. I've heard that the Temple of Heaven is very special. But for some reason I don't know, it doesn't seem to be on our tour schedule.

That doesn't matter. We'll talk about it with the China Travel Service, and if they don't have time to set it up, we can go by ourselves on Sunday.

Go ourselves on Sunday! That's a great plan! Can your husband and children all come too?

Probably. My spouse and my oldest son are both in building. They can do a proper job of showing you the special architectural characteristics of the Temple of Heaven.

How shall we go there?

Do you want to walk a little?

That would be okay. Besides, I suppose the buses are pretty crowded on Sundays.

Mm. From the Běijīng Hotel we walk to the Gate of Heavenly Peace, then we cross the square, and not far from there is the Temple of Heaven.

Okay. Then that's the decision. Only, I wonder how large the Temple of Heaven is? Could we see it in half a day?

The Temple of Heaven is much smaller than the Summer Palace. The main structures include only two parts. You can probably finish seeing it in half a day. Why? Do you have other things to do on Sunday?

Sunday afternoon we've been invited to dinner. It would be embarrassing if we didn't go, but admiring architectural art is certainly an important thing, and half a day probably won't be enough!

B: Hǎo, jiù zhèiyàng le. Wǒ jíde zài Ōuzhōu cānguān yīge jiàotáng hǎi děi yòng bù shǎo shǐjiān ne!

L: Hǎo le, jiù zhèiyàng. Xíngqítiān zǎoshàng bǎdiǎn, zài lǒuxià dǎ méngkǒu jiān, rúguǒ yǒu shénme gāibiàn, wǒ zài dǎ diānhuà gěi nǐ.

B: Hǎode, jiù zhèiyàng!

That's okay, this Sunday we'll go a little earlier. We'll leave early and come back early, and just spend half a day there. If you still want to go we'll try to arrange a time.

Okay, that sounds good. I remember it takes quite a long time to tour a cathedral in Europe!

All right, that's our plan. We'll meet at the entrance downstairs, Sunday morning at eight. If there's any change I'll give you a call.

Okay, that's fine!

---

The Great Wall of China
Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American scholar visiting China talks with an old Chinese friend at the Beijing Hotel.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

- pǐnlái pǎoqì: to run back and forth
- yǐshì: for the moment
- Gānlǐnghǎiyà Dàxué: Columbia University
- hǎishì: it would be better to
- Zhōngshān Gōngyuán: Sun Yatsen Park
- shù: tree
- -kē: (counter for trees)
- -zuò: (counter for massive objects)
- mǔtòu: wood
- Lìàodài: the Liào Period

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why does the American scholar want to stop talking about New York?
2. Why does his Chinese friend think New York is a special place?
3. Does the Chinese friend enjoy old things? How do you know?

4. How do you get from the Bēijīng Hotel to Sun Yatsen Park?

5. Describe three attractions in Sun Yatsen Park.

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, Professor Michaels talks with Ms. Táng Lán, from the China Travel Service, while he packs his bags in his hotel room.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

dǎrǎo to disturb
huàcè book of photographs
xūyāoliàng need, demand
jiēshǒu to accept
lǐwǔ gift
zhāopiàn photograph
yǒuhǎo friendship
dàibiǎo to represent; on behalf of

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What does Ms. Táng Lán bring Professor Michaels?

2. Why does she bring this particular gift?

3. Why does she refuse the pen Professor Michaels offers her?
4. How does Professor Michaels explain his gift of the pen so that it will be acceptable?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

Exercise 4

In this conversation, a young German student is touring the Great Wall at Bādáiyīng when she meets a Chinese who was a classmate of hers three years before in Germany.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

**Mǐ hǎishi lǎo yàngzi**  You look as if you haven't changed a bit

**bàng**  to be great, to be terrific

**wěidà**  to be great (e.g., a leader)

**Mùnhēi**  Munich

**shìzhèngfǔ**  city hall

**zhēngqí**  to be neat, to be tidy

Questions for Exercise 4

1. Why hadn't the German gotten in touch with her Chinese friend yet?

2. What plans of the Chinese government are bothering the German?

3. What example does the Chinese friend give to show that modernization has made improvements in Běijīng?

4. What is the main reason the Chinese friend sees for building the hotel?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

In this conversation, an American scholar visiting China (A) talks with an old Chinese friend of his (B) at the Beijing Hotel.

A: Měichī lǎi Zhōngguó zōngshì yào máfan nǐ, pèizhē wǒmen pāolai pāo-qùe. Nǐ shènme shìhou yě dào Měiguó qù kǎnkan ma? Sān-sīshí-nián le, Měiguó yǐjīng biānè de tài duō le!

Every time I come to China I always trouble you to accompany us all around the place. You should really come see America some time! It's changed a lot in thirty or forty years!

B: Shīài qù shì hǎn xiāng qùde, zhī shì yīshí hǎi zhǎobudào jīhū.

Yes, I'd love to go, it's just that for the moment I can't find the opportunity.

A: Gēilǐnghē Dàxué chāng qīng tāmen-de lǎo xuēshēng hūqu cānguān, yōu-lán. Wǒ shìshì gěi nǐ ānpái yixiā.

Columbia University often invites their old students back to visit and tour. I'll try to arrange it for you.

B: Hǎode....Shuōqilai yě qíguǎi, Nǐ Yuē zhēn shì ge tèbié de dīfang. Wǒ zhū zài nàrde shìhou bù juéde zēnme tài hǎo, kěshì xiànzài cháng xiāngqi ta! Yǒu hěn duō lǎo liùxuéshēng chǎng shuō, shéi zài Nǐ Yuē zhūguō shéi ju huí chángcháng xiāngzhe ta?

Okay....It's a funny thing, but New York is really a special place. When I was living there, I didn't think much of the place, but now I often think of it. A lot of old students returned from abroad often say that whoever has lived in New York will think of it often.

A: Ó, wǒmen bù tán zhiè le. Zài tānxiǎqu wǒ yě yào xiāng jià le. Wǒmen hǎishì chūqu zǒuzou ba!

Let's not talk about this any more. If we keep talking about it, I'm going to start missing home, too. It would be better if we went outside for a walk!

B: Hǎo a! NY xiāng qù nǎr a?

All right! Where would you like to go?

A: Běijīng shì shǒudū, yǐdīng yǒu xīe yǒu yīlái de dīfang. Gǔgōng, Yīhúyúán shēnmele wǒ dōu qūguō le. Fūjīn hǎi yǒu shēnme bīdié dīfang bǐjiāo yǒu yīsī ma?

Běijīng is the capital, so it naturally has some interesting places. I've been to the Palace Museum and the Summer Palace. Are there any other interesting places near here?

B: Gōng zhèlǐ chūqu wáng xī zǒu, chuānguó Tiān'ānmén Guāngchāng, zài Tiān'ānménde xībiān yǒu yīge gōng-yuán, jiāo Zhōngshān Gōngyuán, yì- mian yǒu bù shǎo pǐāolìngde gūdài jiānzhu.

If you go out from here and walk to the west, then cut across Tiān'ānmén Square, then on the west side of Tiān-ānmén there's a park called Sun Yat-sen Park, and inside there are a lot of beautiful ancient buildings.

A: Shī shēnme chǎođǎide jiānzhu, yǒu duōshào niándé lǐshǐ le?

What dynasty are the buildings from? How old are they?
TVL, Unit 4

B: Zuì zháo de jiànzhu shì Liáoqídié, chābūduō yǒu yìqíānliǎnde lǐshǐ le. Nàr hǎi yǒu qìkè gūdài de dā shū, yē dōu yǒu yìqíānliáó nián le. The earliest buildings are from the Liáo Períod. They are about a thou- sand years old. There are also seven ancient trees there, which are over a thousand years old, too.

A: Nèr yě yǒu yǒu míngde gōngdiàn ba? There's a famous palace there too, isn't there?

B: Yǒu, yǒu yǐquè dà diān shī Míng-cháode shíhòu jiànzhuó, yòngde cáiliào quán shì mòtou, yě yǐjīng chābūduō yǒu liǔbániánde lǐshì. Yes. There's a large palace which was constructed in the Míng Dynasty, made entirely of wood. That's about six hundred years old, too.

A: Hào, nà wǒmen xiānzài jiù qu zōuzou. All right, then let's go for a walk right now.

B: Hǎode, zǒu! Okay, let's go!

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American tourist, Professor Michaels (M), is packing his bags in his hotel room. Ms. Tāng Lán (T), from the China Travel Service, comes to his door.

T: Māikē Jiāoshǒu, dārāo nǐ le. Professor Michaels, I'm disturbing you.

M: Méi shénme, kuài qǐng zuò, wǒ zhèr luǎnqībāzāode, zāi shōushí dōngxi. Not at all. Please sit down. It's a mess here, I'm packing.

T: Shénme shíhòude fǎjī ya? When's your plane?


T: Wǒ lái sòng gěi nín yībēn yóulǎn huācè. I've come to give you a photographic travel book.

M: Yóulǎn huācè! Jiǔ shì wǒmen zài yóulǎn wǎnlǐ Chāngchéngde shíhòu, wǒ xiāng mǎi de néizhǒng? A photographic travel book? Is it the kind I wanted to buy when we were touring the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Li?

T: Jì shì. Zhèizhòng huācè xīyāo-liǎng kē dà le. Right. There sure is a great demand for this kind of book of photographs.

M: Shì ma! Óuzhòu láide, wǒ kěrēn dōu xiǎng mǎi yīcēnr. Xīyāo-liǎng yídǐng hěn dà. Sure! Visitors from Europe, America, everywhere, all want to buy one. Of course there's a great demand.
T: Néitiān zài Bādālīng, nǐ méiyǒu mǎizhāo, jīntiān wǒ gěi nǐ sōnglai le.

M: Zhēn xièxiè nǐ, zhèmèi diǎnr xiǎo shír nǐ hái xiǎngzhe. Duòshào qián na?

T: Shi Lúnxīngshè sòng nín de. Wǒmen huānyíng nín zài lǎi.

(Michael takes a Parker pen out of the pocket of his suitcase.)

M: Nà, zhèzhī bǐ sōng gěi nǐ.

T: Ó, bù kěyì, wǒmen bù kěyì jiēshū kěrènde lǐwù.

M: Nàmèi sòng gěi nǐmen Lúnxīngshè. Hái jìde néitiān wǒmen zài Shǐsǎnlǐng ma?

T: Duì, néitiān nǐ hěn gāoxìng.

M: Xīnshǎng Zhōngguó gūdài jiànzhu yīshū shì wǒ zúì gāoxìngde shì. Néitiān wǒmen zhǎo xiǎng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?


M: Duì, nàme jìntiān nǐ sòng huācè lái, wǒ sòng gěi nǐmen yǐzhī bǐ wèishēnme bù kěyì ne?

T: Hǎo. Wǒ dǎibǐ tōngzhīmen xièxiè nǐn, huānyíng nín zài lái.

M: Wǒ yìdīng zài lái.

That day at Bādālīng, you weren't able to find one, so today I'm bringing you one.

Thank you so much. Such a small thing and you still remembered it. How much was it?

It's a gift from the Travel Service. We welcome you to come back again.

Then, take this pen as a gift.

Oh, I can't. We're not allowed to accept gifts from visitors.

Then I give it to your Travel Service. Do you still remember that day at the Thirteen Tombs?

Yes. That day you were very happy.

The thing that makes me happiest is admiring the ancient architectural art of China. That day we took pictures, do you remember?

Yes. That day, you took a picture of us comrades from the Travel Service, and you wrote on the back of the picture "American-Chinese friendship."

Right. So then today since you've brought me the photographic travel book, what's wrong with my giving you a pen?

All right. On behalf of the other comrades, I thank you and welcome you to come back again.

I'll be sure to.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

A traveler from Germany (B) is touring the Great Wall at Bādālīng when she spots a Chinese friend (A) whom she met three years before when he was studying in Germany.
Hey! Xú Gāng! Do you still remember me?

Well! It's you! It's been three years, but you still look the same! How long has it been since you came to Bēijīng?

Ha! It's so good to see you! It's been a week or more since I got here. I've been sightseeing all over the place all along, and haven't been able to give you a call. Are you still at Bēijīng University?

Yes, I'm still there. Your Chinese is getting more and more fantastic!

What's fantastic about it? It's just so-so, really! Oh yes—glad I've run into you here; I have a question I'd like to ask. Do you have time?

Yes. What's your question?

As I remember, the Great Wall passes through many provinces and is over 12,000 lǐ long.

Right!

The Great Wall is China's greatest ancient structure.

Right! That's about the way it is.

Okay. And why did they want to build such a long Great Wall during the Qin dynasty?

As a precaution against invasions from the north, of course.

Then why aren't you doing a good job of protecting the Great Wall, of protecting your ancient tradition?

Says who? We've been repairing it all along, you know!

But I hear that your government has decided to build a modern hotel in the vicinity of the Great Wall. If that's
dìànn. Rúguǒ zhēn shì nìiyàng, wǒ juéde yǒu yìdiǎnr bù tài shūfù.


B: Duì le. Wǒmen zǒuguō lǎo shì-zhèngrǔ mènkòurde shìhòu, kǎndào nàr yǒu hěn duō hěn xiǎndàihuàde fǎngwǎnr, yě yǒu zázhǐ, shùbāo, huàr shènmède, zhēn ràng wǒ xīnli bù shūfù.

A: Hāi, xiǎndàihuàde shēhuì ma, zěnme nèng méiyǒu xiǎndàihuàde dōngxi ne? Bǐfāng shuō Běijīngde Qiánménwài ba, cěngqiǎn yǒu hěn duō xiǎo pùzi. Jīliàng yǐhòu xīguō hǎo duō cǐ, hǎi shì bù tài hǎo, hǒulái chóng-xīn gāi hěn duō dà shāngdiàn, jiù zhěngqíde duō le. Yǒu shènmé bù hǎo ne?

B: Hǎo le, hǎo le, wǒ tóngyǐ le.

A: Shǐ ma? Mí kàn, zhèrde dīxíng duō yǒu yìsi, fēngjǐng duō piāo-liàng. Lái zhèrde rěn wǎnr yǐtiān gòu ma?

B: Dàgāi bù gòu.

A: Jiù shì ma, yàoshi fūjīn yǒu yìge dà fāndiàn, nà duō fāngbiàn!

B: Hǎo le, hǎo le, wǒ tóngyǐ le! Zōu, zánmen zài wǎng shàng zōuzou.

A: Zōu!

really the case, then I feel rather bad about it.

Ah! I remember. When we were in Munich, once we went to visit an old church.

Right. When we walked in front of the old city hall, seeing all those modern restaurants, and the magazines, books, newspapers, paintings, and so on, it really made me feel very bad.

Well, that's modern society, you know! How can it do without modern things? Take Qiánménwài in Běijīng, for example. It used to have a lot of little shops. After liberation, it was fixed up many times, but it still wasn't too good. Later a lot of new big stores were built, and it looked much neater. What's wrong with that?

Okay, okay, I agree.

Sure! Look, the terrain is so interesting here, and the scenery is so beautiful. Is one day enough for the people who come here?

Probably not.

Exactly. If there were a big hotel in the vicinity, how convenient it would be!

Okay, okay, I agree! Come on, let's walk on up!

Let's go.
Unit 5, Reference List

   China's coal resources are large and output is high.

   B: Shì, xiānzài Zhōngguó méitàn chǎnliàng zài shìjièshāng zhàn dìsānweī.  
   Yes, China's coal output ranks third in the world.

2. A: Cōngqián Zhōngguó de shǐyòu dàbùfēn zài lǐ biānjiāng bù yuānde dǐfāng.  
   In the past, China's oil was mostly in places out near the border.

   B: Xiānzài yānhǎi yídàide shǐyòu yě fāzhǎnqīlài le.  
   Now oil in the coastal region is starting to be developed.

3. A: Zhèige kuǎngguōde shíshì fēi chénghū shì shénme shìhòu kāishǐ yǒude?  
   When did the metal industry in this mining area begin?

   B: Bāshí niándài. Jīxià gōngyè yě shì bāshí niándài cái yǒude.  
   In the eighties. There wasn't a machine industry until the eighties, either.

4. A: Zài guó shìnián, dào jiǔshí niándài chū, zhèige guójiā dàgài huì biānchǎng yīge jīngjì qiángguò.  
   In another ten years, in the early nineties, this country will probably become an economic power.

   B: Bù xíng, qǐmǎ děi zài guò èrshínián.  
   No, it will be at least another twenty years.

5. A: Zhéiwèi zài guòwài yǒu míngde gōngchéngshì, huì guò yǐhòu zěnmeyàng là?  
   What happened when this engineer who was famous abroad went back to his country?

   B: Huì guò yǐhòu yǐzhì gāo zhōng gōngyè fāngmìande jìshū gōngzuò.  
   He has been doing technical work in heavy industry since he returned to his country.

   Not only Japan, all countries are now interested in the economic construction of China's coast.

   B: Shì, yǐjīng yǒu xūduō guójiā xiāng hě Zhōngguó yīqǐ zài nèi yídàì chénggōng xiān fēn gōngsè.  
   Yes, there are already many countries which are thinking of establishing new companies with China in that area.
7. A: Tíngshuō zhēige nóngrégū yǐjīng yǒu lìliàng fāzhǎn gōngyè le. I hear that this agricultural area already has the capability to develop its industry.

B: Jìn shínián lái, zhēige dǐqù-de nóngrégū shèngchǎn gāođe bù cuò, shōùrù bù shào, gāole yìdiǎnr qīng gōngyè. Over the past ten years, agricultural production in this area has been good and income has been high, so some light industry was set up.

8. A: Tíngshuō èrshínián qián yǒu hěn duō niánqǐng rén dàole nèige méiyǒu rénde qíng difang. I heard that twenty years ago a lot of young people came to that poor and unpopulated place.

B: Shì a! Kāshì xiànzài zhègè fáyǐ fāngzǎi le. Nèige difang yǐjīng suān jiānhède bù cuò le. Yes, but now the government need not worry anymore. That place can be considered to have been pretty well built up.

9. A: Zǒngde lái shuō ba, zhēige chéngshì hǎi biānhuà shì hěn dàde. Generally speaking, the changes in this city have been great.

B: Shì a, zhàn zài shí zhōngxīn-de dálōushàng kànkan, wǒ dōu bù rěnshí le! Yes, standing on top of the building in the center of the city, looking out, I don't recognize anything anymore!

10. A: Xūwū jīngjí lìliàng bǐjìǎo rùde guójí hěn gānxiè Zhōngguó de bāngzhù. Many countries with relatively weak economies are grateful for China's help.

B: Wǒmen yě shì yīge fāzhǎn-zhòngde guójí, kāshì wǒmen hěn gāoxìng bāng qīn guójí gāo jīngjí jiānshè. We're still a developing country, too, but we're happy to help other countries in economic construction.

11. hǎiwān gulf, bay

12. Guǎngdōng (a province, formerly Kwangtung)

13. Hēilónɡjiānɡ (a province, formerly Heilongjiang)

14. Shānxī (a province, formerly Shensi, now officially spelled Shaanxi)

15. Sìchuān (a province, formerly Szechwan)

16. Tiānjin (a municipality, formerly Tientsin)
Unit 5, Vocabulary List

ba
(bmarker of pause or hypothesis)
bèng
to help
biànhuà
change
biǎnjìng
border, frontier
chénglì
the beginning of (a time period)
- chū
to establish
fàng xīn
to be unworried, to be at ease
gānxìè
to be thankful, to be grateful
gē-
each, every, various, different
gōngchénghǎi
engineer
Guǎngdōng
(province in south China)
guānxīn
to be concerned about, to care about
hǎiwān
bay; gulf
Hēilóngjiāng
(province in northeast China)
jīn
the past..., the last...
jīnhǔ
metal
kuǎngqū
mining region
lìliàng (līliàng)
power, force, strength
mèitān
coal
niándài
decade of a century
qiáng
to be strong
qiánghuó
powerful nation, a power
qǐmǎ
at least
qǐng
to be light
qǐng gōngyè
light industry
qióng
to be poor
qítà
other
- qū
area, region, district
ruò
to be weak
Shānxi
(province in north central China)
... (lái) shuō
... speaking
Sīchuān
(province in southwest China)
suàn
to be considered, to count as
Tiānjīn
(municipality southeast of Běijīng)
-wèi
place, position (rank)

120
xǔduō
many, much

yánhǎi
along the coast, coastal

zhōng
to be heavy

zhōngxīn
center, heart, core, hub

zīyuán
(natural) resources

zōngde lái shuō
generally speaking, on the whole
Unit 5: Reference Notes

1. A: Zhōngguó méítàn zīyuán bù shǎo, chǎnliàng hěn gāo.
   China's coal resources are large and output is high.

   B: Shì, xiànzàì Zhōngguó méítàn chǎnliàng zài shìjièshāng zhàn dìsānwéi.
   Yes, China's coal output now ranks third in the world.

Notes on No. 1

méítàn: "coal" In daily life (for coal is still used as a fuel in many homes in China), this is usually called simply méi. Tàn by itself means "charcoal" (charcoal is also called wùtàn, literally, "wood-charcoal"). Another word tàn, written with a different character but pronounced exactly the same, means the element "carbon."

Zhèige dìfāngde méítàn shèngchǎn qíngkuàng bù cū.
Coal production is doing very well in this place.

zīyuán: "resources" This is used in such phrases as zìrán zīyuán, "natural resources," and dìxià zīyuán, "underground resources."

Rìběn yǒu zīyuán de wèntí.
Japan has a problem of resources.
(refers to lack of resources)

bù shǎo: "not few," i.e., "many," "large" Remember that Chinese often uses bù to express the opposite of adjectives:

Shǐjiān bù zǎo le.
It's getting late.

Nǐ zhēn bù cōngmíng.
You're really dumb.

Nèige guójì de jīngjì fāzhǎn bù mān.
That country's economy is developing quite fast.

dìsānwéi: "third place" - wéi is the same word you learned in Níwéi shì Gāo Tōngzhī?, but here it means "place" or "position" in a statistical ranking. -wèi also means "place" in mathematics: gēwèi, "the units place"; shèiwèi, "the tens place"; bǎiwèi, "the hundreds place"; etc.

Use the pattern zhàn dí—wèi for "to rank in ... position":

Zhōngguó rénkǒu zhàn shìjiè diyǐwèi.
China's population ranks first in the world.

Yīndū dāozī chǎnliàng zài shìjièshāng zhàn dìyǐwèi?
How does India's rice production rank in the world?

B: Xiànzài yánhái yǐdài shìyóu yě fāzhǎnqǐlái le.

In the past, China's oil was mostly in places near the border.

Now oil in the coastal region is starting to be developed, too.

Notes on No. 2

biānjīng: "(national) border"

Zài biānjíng dìqū shēnghuò, gōngzuò de rén, yìdīng yào tèbié xiāoxīn.

Zhèige chéngshì lǐ biānjīng hěn jīn.

This city is very near the border.

Zài lǐ biānjīng bù yuándē dīfāng: "was in places near the border" The main verb of the sentence is zài, "was in." The phrase lǐ biānjīng bù yuándē dīfāng goes with -de and describes dīfāng. Here is a diagram of the structure:

Zhōngguó shìyóu zài lǐ biānjīng bù yuán -de dīfāng.

China's oil was in not far from the border places.

yánhái: "along the coast," "coastal" (Yán, which you will learn in Unit 7, means "along.")

Zhèizhòng dōngxī shì yánhái dìqū cāi yǒu dé.

This kind of thing is found only in the coastal regions.

Néijíng yánhái chéngshì jiǎnshè hěn kuài.

Those few coastal cities have been built up very quickly.

Yánhái yǐdài is a very common way of saying "coastal region." You should also memorize the expressions yánhái gěshēng, "the (various) coastal provinces," and yánhái zīyuán, "coastal resources."

3. A: Zhèige kuāngguó jǐnshū gōngyè shì shénme shíhou kāishǐ yǒude?

B: Bāshí niándài. Jīxiè gōngyè yě shì bāshí niándài cāi yǒude.

When did the metal industry in this mining area begin?

In the eighties. There wasn't a machine industry until the eighties, either.

Notes on No. 3

kuàngguó: "mining area/region" Kuàng is the word for "mine," as in

*On the word gè-, "various," see the Notes on No. 6.

Zhèige jīhùa shì guān’yǔ kuàng-qū jiānshède. This plan has to do with the development of mining regions.

jīnshū: "metal," literally, "metal-category"

Zhè shì jīnshūde ma? Is this (made of) metal?

Xiǎnzài wǒmen zuò zhèzhēng dōngxi bù yòng jīnshū, dōu yòng zhǐ le. Now we no longer make this kind of thing out of metal, we make it out of paper.

niǎndài: This has two meanings: (1) (as used in 3B) "a decade of a century," e.g., èrshí niǎndài. "the twenties"; (2) "period," "era"

Zhèige gūshi xiān de shì shénme niǎndài de shì? What period is this story about?

Zhèipíng jīù shì shénme niǎn-dài de? What vintage is this wine/liquor?

jīxiè: "machine," "machinery," "mechanical"

Wǒmen zhídài shēngchǎn zhùyào kào jīxiè. Most of our production here is by machine.

Jīxiè is also pronounced Jījiè.

Jīqì, "machine," which you learned in Unit 3, is different from Jīxiè. Jīqì refers to individual machines; Jīxiè is machines in general—machinery. Jīqì virtually always translates as "machine(s)." Jīxiè is basically "machinery," but may translate as "machine" in certain phrases, like Jīxiè gōnggrén, "machine worker," Jīxiè gōngyuè, "machine industry," etc.

4. A: Zǎi guò shìniándài, dào jīshí niǎndài chū, zhège guójiā dàgài huì biānchāng yīge jīngli jīngguò. In another ten years, in the early nineties, this country will probably become an economic power.

B: Bù xīng, jīdāi zǎi guò èrshíniándài. No, it will be at least another twenty years.

Notes on No. 4

zǎi guò shìniándài: "in another ten years," "after another ten years have passed" Here are some more examples of the use of (zǎi) guò (Amount of Time):

zǎi guò jīnián wǒ jiù xǐguàn zhèrde shēnghuó le. I’ll get used to life here in another few years.
Guò jītiān tā jiù yào qù Yīdàlǐ zuǒ lǐngshì le. In a few days, he will be going to Italy to be consul.

-chū: "at the beginning of" a time period

Míngniánchū wǒ qù Shānhǎi. At the beginning of next year I'm going to Shānhǎi.

Yuèchū zài shuō ba! We'll see about it at the beginning of (next) month!

Zhèige yuè chū tiānqì kāishí nuǎnhuo le. The weather started to get warmer at the beginning of this month.

Wénhuà Dà Gémíng chū wǒmen shéi dōu hǎi bù zhīdào shì zěnme huí shì. At the beginning of the Cultural Revolution, none of us knew what it was all about yet.

qiángguó: "strong-country," i.e., "a (world) power"

qīmǎ: (1) "at least"

Tā xué Zhōngwén qīmǎ yǒu wǔnián le, dānshí hǎi shuōde bù hǎo. He has been studying Chinese for at least five years, but he still doesn't speak well.

Měitiān wǎnháng wǒ qīmǎ yào kàn liǎngge zhōngtóu shū cái néng shuì jiào. Every evening I have to read at least two hours before I can go to sleep.

Zhèige rén zhēn néng pāo, měitiān qīmǎ pāo shíèr yǐnglǐ. This guy can really run. Every day he runs at least twelve miles.

(2) "minimum, lowest (required to be acceptable), most basic, rudimentary"

Zhèige rén! Lián qǐmǎ de lǐmào dōu bù dōng! This guy! He doesn't even understand the most basic manners!

Ni lián zhè qǐmǎ de dàolí dōu bù dōng?! You don't even understand this basic principle (of conduct, life, etc.)?!

Similar expressions include qǐmǎ de tiāojiēn, "the most basic conditions"; qǐmǎ de huánrèn, "the most basic environment(al conditions)"; qǐmǎ de zhīshi, "the most rudimentary knowledge"; qǐmǎ de shūpīng, "the minimum level."
5. A: Zhèiwèi zài guòwài yǒu míngde gōngchéngshī, hū guò yīhōu zěnmeyǎng la?
    What happened when this engineer who was famous abroad went back to his country?

B: Hū guò yīhōu yǐzhī gāo zhōng gōngyè fāngmiàn de jīshū gōngzuò.
    He has been doing technical work in heavy industry since he returned to his country.

Notes on No. 5

zěnmeyǎng la?: "what happened (to him)" Le is just a contraction of le and a. Here are more examples of the extremely useful word zěnmeyǎng, "how is...", "what happened (to)...", or "do what":

Ránhòu ne? Ránhòu zěnmeyǎng?
And then? Then what happened?

É, hǎo jǐnián měi kànjiàn Xiǎo Wǔ le, tā zěnmeyǎng le?
Say, I haven't seen Xiǎo Wǔ for many years. What ever became of her?

Yīge rén bù néng xiāng zěnmeyǎng jiù zěnmeyǎng.
A person cannot just do anything they feel like doing.

Nǐ yào shì bù gāosu ta, tā huì duī nǐ zěnmeyǎng ma?
If you don't tell him, will he try to do anything to you?
Tā bù huì zěnmeyǎng.
He won't do anything.

A: Nǐ dàsuàn zěnmeyǎng?
B: Nǐ xiāng wǒ yīnggāi zěnmeyǎng?
A: Wǒ bù zhīdào, nǐ yào zěnmeyǎng jiù zěnmeyǎng.
What are you going to do?
What do you think I should do?
I don't know. Do whatever you want to do.

zhōng: "to be heavy," in several senses:

Zhèige jǐqi yǒu duō zhōng?
How heavy is this machine?

Gōngkè tài zhōng, zhēn lei.
I have too much homework; I'm really tired.

Bú yào bā huà shuōde tài zhōng le.
Don't put it too strongly.

Tā shuōle zhōng shǎng, xiànzài zài yīyuǎnli.
He was badly injured and is now in the hospital.

Zhòngliàng means "weight" (compare chănliàng, zhīliàng, shǐliàng).
The opposite of zhōng is qīng, "to be light," which is introduced in No. 7, below.
6. A: Bǐ jiù shì Rìběn, xiànzhāi
gèguò dōu bèn guānxīn
Zhōngguó yánghǎi de jīngjì
jiānshē.

B: Shì. Yǐjīng yǒu xīduō guójiā
xiǎng hé Zhōngguó yīqi zài
nèi yīdài chénglì xīn
gōngsī.

Notes on No. 6

gèguò: "various countries" Gè-, "each and every," "various," is a speci-
 fier like zhè-, "this," or nèi-, "that." You can prefix it to counters and to
some nouns. Here are some examples:

Wǒmen zài quānguó gēdì cānguān
yóulǎnle yīge yuè.

We visited and toured all over the
country for one month. (Gèdì is
"each place," "various places.")

Xiànzhāi gèrén zuò gèrénde, sī-
diǎn zài kāi huì.

For now, everyone can do what they
want. We will have the meeting
at four. (Gèrén is "everybody.")

Gèwèi rúguǒ yǒu shénme wèntí,
quīng xiànzhāi tīchulai.

If you all have any questions, please
bring them up now. (Gèwèi is a
polite form of address for a group
of people, e.g., an audience. -wèi
is the polite counter for people.)

Tāmen yòng gèzhǒng xiàndài huà
dìqì.

They use all kinds of modern machines.
(Gèzhǒng is "various kinds.")

When a gè- phrase is followed in the sentence by dōu, "all," it takes on the
meaning "every," "all." Thus gèguò in sentence 6A is translated as "all
countries."

guānxīn: "to be concerned about," "to care about," "to be interested in"
the welfare of something.

Zhèrde lǎoshī bèn guānxīn xué-
shēng.

The teachers here are very concerned
about (care about) the students.

Tā bèn guānxīn kuàngqù de jiānshē,
sāngē yùělǐ lái. Kānguó hǎo jī-
cī.

He cares a great deal about the building
up of the mining region; he came to
see it many times in three months.

xīduō: "many," "a great deal (of)," "lots (of)" This is a synonym of
hěn duō, and used in the same ways.

chénglì: "to establish," "to found," "to set up"

Mǎiguó Diànhuà Diànhuà Gōngsī
shì nǎinián chénglìde?

In what year was AT&T established?
7. A: Tìngshuō zhèige nóngyègū yǐjīng yǒu lìliàng fāzhǎn gōngyè le.
    I hear that this agricultural area already has the capability to
develop its industry.

B: Jìn shìnián lái, zhèige dìqū de nóngyè shèngchǎn gōngdú bu
cuò, shòurù bù shǎo, gāole yídīān qīng gōngyè.
Over the past ten years, agricultural
production in this area has been
good and income has been high, so
some light industry was set up.

Notes on No. 7

-gū: "area," "region," "district" This word, which you have already seen
in dìqū, "area," "region," and in kuāngqū, "mining region," can combine with
many other words, for example gōngyègū, "industrial region," nóngyègū, "agri-
cultural region" or "farming region," shāngyègū, "business district (of a
city)," fēngjǐnggū, "scenic spot," shāngqū, "mountainous district."

lìliàng: "power," "force," "strength" In 7A, this is translated
idiomatically as "capability." Another example would be jīngjí lìliàng,
"economic capability." Here are more examples (for the third one, you need to
know tuánjìe, "unity"): Wǒmén de lìliàng bú gòu, méiyou
bānzhǔ bānzhù ni. Our power is insufficient; there is
no way we can help you.

Dà zìde shíhou, bù néng yòng tài
dà lìliàng. When typing, one should not hit
too hard.

Tuánjìe jǐ jù shì lìliàng. Unity is strength.

Shénme lìliàng yě bù néng bǎ
wǒmén fēnkǎi. No force can separate us.

jìn...lái: "during the last..."

Jìn sāntiān lái, Xīzōng Huá hào-
xìang xīnli hěn bù gāoxíng. For the last three days, Xīzōng Huá
has seemed very unhappy.

Jìn jīn nián lái, tā biānhuà hěn
dá. In recent years, she has changed
a great deal.

Jìn bānián láide Zhōngguó lǐshì
hěn yǒu yǐlsì. Chinese history of the past hundred
years is very interesting.

qīng: "to be light" in weight

Xiāngzì bù zhòng, hěn qīng. The suitcase isn't heavy; it's light.

Qīng gōngyè gōngrén méiyòu zhòng
gōngyè gōngrèn de shòuruò duō. Light industrial workers do not
have as high wages as heavy
industrial workers.

B: Shì a! Kěshì xiānxī zèngfēn de yǐjīng suān jiānshède bù cuò le.

I heard that twenty years ago a lot of young people came to that poor and unpopulated place.
Yes, but now the government need not worry anymore. That place can be considered to have been pretty well built up.

Notes on No. 8
èrshínián qián: Qián is a short form of yīqián. You can often substitute qián for yīqián when it comes at the end of a time phrase. Both words are commonly used in conversation and writing. More examples:

Wǒ lái Méiguó qián, shènmé yě méi zhǔnbèi.

Yīge yuè qián, zhèige dālòu hǎi méi gāiwán, xiānzÀi yǐjīng zhù rén le.

qiōng: "to be poor"
Qiōng bù shì wèntí, lǎn cài shì wèntí.

fàngxīn: "to be unworried," "to be at ease," "to put one's mind at ease" (literally, "put down the heart")

Nǐ bān shì, wǒ fàngxīn.

Nǐ fàngxīn hǎo le, wǒ huǐ xiǎng bānfāde.

Nǐ yīge rén qù, wǒ bù fàngxīn.

suān: "to be counted as," "to be considered as," "can be regarded as" This verb is used much more often than these English translations would seem to indicate. To really get the feel of what suān means, you have to look at it in context. Here are some examples (the translations attempt to be idiomatic):

A: Hángzhōu suān bu suān gōngyè chéngshì?
B: Bù suān, suān yóulán chéngshì. No, it's a tourist city.

Zènme duō cài, sānshí kuài qián bù suān gǔlì.

Thirty dollars isn't expensive for so much food.
NY děi zìjì huì shuō nǐ xiǎngdè
A: Tài xièxiè le!
B: Nà suàn shénme! Pénghǒu ma!

Zhòngwén.

You have to be able to say what you
want to say before you can be con-
sidered to speak Chinese.

Thank you so much!

It's nothing (literally, "What can that
be considered")! We're friends,
after all!

Fāzhǎn bǐjiǎo wàixíng yào suàn
méitàn gōngyè hé jǐxiè gōngyè.

One would have to say the coal indus-
try and the machine industry are
the most rapidly developing
industries.

Tiānjin suǐrán bù suàn zuǐ yǒu
mìngde chéngshì, dānshí māi-
nián yě yǒu bù shào rén qu
cánguǎn.

Although one would not call Tiānjin
a very famous city, quite a few
people go there to visit every year.

Shuō zhèzhòng huá hái suàn shì
wǎijiāoguǎn!

What kind of diplomat talks like that!
(literally, "(in view of the fact
that he) says such things, can he
still be considered a diplomat?!)

Zhèi yě suàn Bēijīng kǎoyā ma?
bù duō ma!

They call this Peking duck? The
flavor is all wrong!

Zài zhèjīng xuéshènglǐ, tā hái
suàn shì bāode ne, kěshì dōu
bù tài hǎo.

Of these students, I suppose he's
the best, but none of them is
very good.

Notes on No. 9

zòngde lái shuō: "generally speaking," "on the whole"

zòngde lái shuō, wǒmen xuéxiào
xuéshèngdè shuǐpíng dōu shì
hěn gāodé.

zòngde lái shuō, nǐmèn dōu cóng
gāodé bù cóù.

Generally speaking, the changes in
this city have been great.

Yes, standing on top of the build-
ing in the center of the city,
looking out, I don't recognize
anything anymore!

zòngde lái shuō: Generally speaking, our school's
Students are of a very high
caliber.

A similar phrase using the pattern
...lái shuō is yībān lái shuō, which means
"generally speaking," "ordinarily":

Yībān lái shuō, wǒ méigè yuè qù kàn ta yīcì. Generally speaking I go see him once a month.

Yībān lái shuō, Huáshèngdùn de chūtiān hěn shūfu. Generally speaking, spring in Washington is very comfortable.

Yībān lái shuō, Zhōngguó rén zōngshì hěn kēqì. Generally speaking, Chinese people are always polite.

ba: This is a new use of ba for you. It is used in colloquial speech to mark a pause in the sentence, setting off the topic which precedes it (in this case, zòngde lái shuō).

Zhèige rén ba, bù shì zuò wàijiāoguānde cāilǐào. This guy--he isn't foreign service officer material.

biànhuà: "change(s)" This is only used as a noun.

Shínián bù jiàn, tā biànhuà hǎo dà. He hadn't seen her in ten years, and she had changed a great deal.

shì: "city," "municipality" Used mostly in reference to the official city level of government, e.g., Dàqīng shì, "the city of Dàqīng," Bēijīng shì, "Bēijīng municipality," shì bāndé, "city-run," yánhǎi gēshēng, shì, "the coastal provinces and cities." Shì is also used in a few set phrases like shì zhōngxīn, "center of the city," "downtown."

zhōngxīn: "center," "heart," "core," "hub"

Bēijīng shì Zhōngguó de zhèngzhì, wēnhuà zhōngxīn. Bēijīng is the political and cultural center of China.

Guǎngzhōu shì yīge shāngyè zhōngxīn. Guǎngzhōu is a commercial center.

Wǒmen hái méiyǒu tándao wèntì de zhōngxīn. We haven't yet touched on the core of the question.

Zhōngxīn can also be used before a noun to modify it. It then translates as "central":

Zhèxīn niánde zhōngxīn gōngzuò shì gǎo jīngjì jiānshè. The central task now and in the coming years is to engage in economic construction.
10. A: Xūdū jīngji jiùliăng bǐjiāo
yùde guójiā hěn gānxiè
Zhōngguó de bāngzhù.

   Many countries with relatively weak
economies are grateful for China's
help.

B: Wǒmen yě shì yīge fāzhǎn
zhōngguó de guójiā, kěshì wǒ-
men hěn gāoxìng bāng qītā
guójiā gǎo jīngjì jiānshè.

   We're still a developing country, too,
but we're happy to help other
countries in economic construction.

Notes on No. 10

ruò: "to be weak" (people or countries)

gānxiè: "to be grateful (for)"

Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ hěn gānxiè
wàiguó zhǔhuàjiā dui Zhōngguó-
de bāngzhù.

   The Chinese government is very
grateful for the help foreign
experts give to China.

Tā fēicháng gānxiè pèngyoumén
dui tāde guānxin.

   He is very grateful for his friends'
concern.

Fēicháng gānxiè.

   Thank you so much. (formal)

bāng: (1) "to help, to assist" This is a less formal synonym of bāngzhù.

   This is a less formal synonym of bāngzhù.

Bié jǐ, wǒ lái bāng ni.

   Take it easy, I'll help you.

(2) "for (someone)," "as a help to (someone)"

Nǐ qù bāng wǒ ná xīn, hǎo ma?

   Would you go get the mail for me,
please?

Bāng wǒ ná yīxiā hǎo ma?

   Would you please hold this for me
a second?

In most cases, the context will clarify whether bāng is meant as "to help
someone do something" or as "to do something for someone," but ambiguity may
arise:

Tā bāng wǒ zuò fàn.

   She helps me cook.

   OR

   She cooks for me.

Using yīqǐ, "together," can remove the ambiguity: Tā bāng wǒ yīqǐ zuò fàn
can only mean "She helps me cook," meaning that the two people make dinner
together; it could not possibly mean "She cooks for me."

qītā: "other," "else," "the rest"

Zhèxiē shū wǒ jiù kànle liǎng-
bèn, qītā hái méi kàn.

   I've only read two of these books.
   I haven't read the others yet.

Nǐ qù Shānghǎi, qītā rén me?

   You're going to Shānghǎi; what about
the others?
TVL, Unit 5

Nǐ bái xiǎng qù shénme qítā de difang, wǒmen zài zuò ānpái.

Chúle zhèige shì zhǔyào wèntí, qítā dōu méi guānxi.

Wǒ zhǐ juéde bù hǎo yìsi, qítā méiyǒu shénme.

If you want to go to any other places, we'll make more arrangements.

Besides this, which is the main issue, the rest doesn't matter.

I just feel embarrassed, nothing else.
In the waiting room of Beijing Railroad Station, an American engineer, Mr. Simms (A), is standing in front of the railroad map of China, trying to locate a city. Zhu Wenyu (B) of the China Travel Service enters the room with a train schedule in her hand.

A: Sàmsī Xiānszheng, nǐn yào de shìjiānbiāo.
Mr. Simms, the schedule you asked for.

B: Lūxīngshède gōngzuò yě déi xiāndài huà ma? Dui le, wǒ gōngcāi jǐn-lái de shìhou, nǐn bāoxiāng zài zhǎo shénme. Wǒ yě xǐ yì bāng nǐn zhǎoyízhào?
Thank you, thank you. It has Chinese characters and Pinyin, that's great. You people are much faster on the job than you used to be.

A: Nǐ kǎn, Dàqīng bù shì zài Hèi-lǒngjīāng ma? Wǒ zēnme zhǎo le bàn-tiān méi zhǎoxiān ne?
Look. Isn't Dàqīng in Hèilǒngjīāng?

B: Ó, nǐ zài biǎnjīngshāng zhǎo dāngrán zhǎobudào le, Dàqīng zài Hèilǒngjīāngde zhōngxīn, zài zhèr ne!
Oh, of course you won't find it if you look near the border. Dàqīng is in the center of Hèilǒngjīāng. Here it is!

Oh, here it is. In the sixties and seventies this was a rather special economic region.

B: Mǐn shuōduī duī. Zhéiè jíngguò jīngguò érshíniàde jiānshè, fázhǎnchénge yǒu qīshí wàn rénkǒu de gōngyè chéngshì. Bāshí nián dà chū yǒu chéngliè de Dàqīng Shì Hěnmiú Zhèngfǔ. That's right. It went through about twenty years of construction to develop into an industrial city of 700,000. Then in the early eighties they established the People's Government of the City of Dàqīng.

A: Zài shì zhèngfǔde lǐngdǎoxià, Dàqīngde jiānshè sǔdú dāgāi gēng kuài le. Zuìjūn qiānduó gōngyè yǒu méiyǒu shènme xínduó fázhǎn?
Under the leadership of the city government, Dàqīng is probably being built even faster. Has there also been growth in other industries recently?

B: Fǎzhǎn bǐjiāo kuài de yào suàn měi tān gōngyè hé jīxī gōngyè le.
The coal industry and the machine industry would have to be counted among the more rapidly developing.

A: Měi tān shēngchǎn zài Zhōngguó de zhōng gōngyè de zhān hěn zhòngyào de dìxiē, Dōngběi yǐzhī shì měi tān Coal production has a very important place in China's heavy industry. Manchuria has always had a very high
B: Duì, Dōngběi méitàn zhìyuán bù shǎo, shì zhōngyào de kuàngqū. Sà-mùshì Xiānsheng, nǐ yǐzhǐ hén guānxīn wǒmènde jǐngjì jiānshè hǎo a!

A: Shì a, wǒ shì gōngchénghǎi, wǒ yǐzhǐ fēichánghǎi Zhōngguó jīngjì jiānshè hǎo, wǒ xīwàng Zhōngguó kuài yìdiǎnr jiānshè chéng yīge gōngyè huà de guójì.

B: Xièxiè nín. Xiànzáì yǒu hěn duō wàiguó pénghòu guānxīn wǒmènde jiānshè, wǒmén shì fēichánghǎi jīnxiè de. Zhōngguó hǎi shì yǐzhǐ hěn qióngde guójì, xūyào shì jì guò zhūnjiàmèng de bānghuá.

A: Nǐn tài kěqi le, nǐmén gēngmí ài fāshān sùdú hǎi shí xiāngdāng kuàide. Êrqiě, zhōngdiàn fāzhǎn dīqǔ yě bù shǎo, wǒ xiāng, nǐmén yào zhōngdiàn fāzhǎn gōngyè qímǎ yǒu shǐgé.

B: Shì, yǒu shǐgé.

A: Chúle Běijīng, Tiānjīn, Shānghǎi, Dàqīng yīwēi, Néiměng, Shānxī, Sīchuān, zhěshì difáng zài zújīn shēnliáng dōu huì yǒu hěn dà de biānhuá, duì bu duì?

B: Nǐn bìe wàngle, wǒmènde yánhǎi yídài, zújīn jīnián jīnbù hěn kuài cǐ! Tèbié shì Guǎngdōng.

A: Guǎngdōngde qīng gōngyè yǐzhǐ shì bù huáide.

B: Zújīn, nàrde shì yǒu gōngyè yě gāode xiāngdāng bù cuō, nǐn mǎiyì tīngshuō ma?

A: Tīngshuō le. Wǒ zhēnme huì wàngle Zhōngguó háiwǎn shì yǐshū ne? Hái yǒu, Yǔnnán de tèdiǎn shì shénme ne?
TVL, Unit 5

B: Shi jīnshǔ gōngyè.

A: Nǐ kǎnkàn, Zhōngguóde qīngkuāng bù cuò ma? Nànfāngde jīnshǔ gōngyè fāzhǎnde gèng kuài le.

A: Zhè shì zhènde. Suírán wǒmen xiǎnzài de jīshū lǐliàng bái hén rúduō, kě shì wǒmen yǐdīng děi nǔlì jiǎokuài fāzhǎnde sùdù.

A: Měi wèntí, yǐshǐnǐ yǐhòu Zhōngguó yǐdīng kěyǐ biànchéng yīge jǐngjí qiāngguō.

A: Zhě bù yǐdīng, yěxǔ bù yào tài chángdē shǐjiān. Bǐfēng shuō shǐyòu bái Yī jīn wǔ líng nián, nǐmèn de shíyòu chānhánliàng zài shǐjiè shàng zhān dǐnéishǐjiēwěi, xiānzài ne, xiānzài shì dībāwěi lài!

B: Shíyòu gōngyè tāběi yǐdīnghǎi, pǔtíān de lái shūo, wǒmen bǐ yǒu bù shǎo wèntí, zāi xǔduō fāngmìăn wǒmen bǐ děi xué.

A: Bù yào kāi, bù guān shì shěnmé jīshū wèntí, rùguó shì wǒ kěyǐ bāng mǎngdē jìqǐ qíng gāosù wo.

B: Tài xièxiè nǐn le. Shàngqī nǐn bù shì shuō xiāng duō cānguǎn jīgě gōngyèqū mā?

A: Shì a, yǒu méiyǒu kěnéng?

B: Yǒu, lǐngdǎo zhèng zai ānpái. Nǐn fānxīn ba!

A: Tài xièxiè nǐmen le.

B: Shǐjiān bù zǎo le, wǒmen zhǔnbèi shàngché ba?

A: Hǎo, zǒu!

The metal industry.

Look, China's situation is pretty good. The metal industry of the south is developing even more quickly.

That's true. Although our technical capability is still weak, we must work hard to speed our development.

That's no problem. In a few decades I'm sure China will become an economic power.

Thank you, but perhaps it will take more time than that.

Not necessarily, maybe it won't be too long. Oil, for example. In 1950 you were twenty-ninth in the world in oil production, and now--now you're in eighth place!

The oil industry is a little special. Generally speaking, we still have a lot of problems. We still have to learn in a lot of areas.

Don't be polite. No matter what the technical problem, if it's something I can help with, please let me know.

Thank you so much. Remember you said last time that you would like to visit more industrial regions?

Right. Does it look possible?

Yes, my superiors are arranging it right now. Don't worry!

Thank you so much.

It's almost time. Let's get ready to board the train.

All right, let's go!
Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, a Chinese engineer meets an American guest in the First Heavy-Duty Machine Factory in Fùlǎérjī, Hēilǒngjìāng.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

ràng nǐn jǐn děng le  I've kept you waiting
zhōnggōngchēngshī  chief engineer
jiānlǐ  to establish
Sūlián  Soviet Union
huā  to spend, to expend
chǎng  factory

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What does Mr. Sūn write about?
2. When was the factory founded?
3. How much money did the government spend on the factory?
4. When did Mr. Sūn work there?
5. What prediction does Mr. Sūn make about the factory?
After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

**Exercise 3**

In this conversation, an American visitor talks to a young Chinese technician in his Beijing Hotel room.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

- Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gōngghéguó the People's Republic of China
- guó mín jīng jì national economy
- gēnzhè along with, in the wake of
- jiù ná Sìchūān lái shuō take Sichuan, for example

**Questions for Exercise 3**

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Why did the American visitor want to talk to the Chinese technician?
2. How have light and heavy industry changed since 1949?
3. What is the policy with regard to agricultural modernization?
4. What economic problem did Sichuan face in the seventies? Why?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.

**Exercise 4**

This dialogue takes place in Shanghai's Industrial Exhibition Hall. An American talks to an exhibit guide about light and textile industry.
Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

- fāngzhī gōngyè textile industry
- nílóng nylon
- huàxiān synthetic fiber
- nèidì interior region (of a country)
- Jiāngsū (coastal province, formerly spelled Kiangsu)

Questions for Exercise 4

1. What does the exhibit guide say about the development of the textile industry?

2. Where did China's light industry begin?

3. What industry has developed in Jiāngsū province?

4. What does the exhibit guide say will occur in the next few years?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

In the foreign visitors' reception room of the First Heavy-Duty Machine Factory in Fēilǐngāi, Héilǒngjǐāng, an American guest (A) is sitting on the sofa, leafing through a copy of the magazine China Reconstructs. A Chinese engineer (B) walks in, carrying a briefcase under his arm.

B: Dùibuqǐ, dùibuqǐ, ràng nín jiù wèng le.

A: Méi shenme, wǒ láile bú dào shì fān zhōng. Nǐ jiù shì Sūn Zhōng-gōngchēngshí ba?

B: Wǒ jiù shì.


B: Xièxiè nín. Zhèige chǎng shì wǔshí niàndài chū jiānlìde.

A: Nà shì xīn Zhōngguó chénglǐ yìhòu bù jiùde shì.

B: Shìde, shì nǐ dǐyǐe wǔnián jīhuàzhōng jiānlìde.

A: Shì Sūlián bāng nǐmén jiānshède mà?

B: Bù shì, wànquān shì Zhōngguó rénmín zìjǐ jiānshède. Nàige shìshòu zhǎngzhǐ yònggé liúge yì lǎi jiānshè zhèige chǎng.

A: Liúge yì?

A: Tíngshuō zài wǔshí nián dàì hé
lìshì nián dàì zheìge chǎng zài
Zhōngguó dé zōng gōngyè de zhàn hěn
zhòngyào de díwei. Nǐ ge shíhou,
nǐ zài zheìge chǎng ma?

B: Zài. Cóng zheìge chǎng chéngliè
dé nèi yitiān yǐzhǐ dào Yī jiǔ liù liù
nián, wǒ dōu zài zheìge chǎng.

A: Yǐhòu nǐ líkāi le?

B: Shìde. Yǐzhǐ dào Yī jiǔ qī qī
nián wǒ cái huìlái.

A: Tíngshuō nǐ ge shíhou zheìge
chǎngdè mǎfàn bù shǎo.

B: Hěilóngjiāng suīrán bù suàn mǎfàn
suī duō duō, dànshì Yī jiǔ qī qī
nián de shíhou zheìge chǎngde shèng-
chǎn chábuduō shì cóng lǐng kāišǐ.

A: Nà yào huǐ hěn dàde lǐliàng.

B: Yǐdiǎnr yè bù cuò. Wǒmen huále
hěn dàde lǐliàng jiānshè kuàngqū,
èr zheìge chǎng. Zài qītāde wèn-
tishàng wǒmen yè yòngle bù shǎode
lǐliàng.

A: Shénmeyángde wèntí néi?

B: Dàjià de shēnghuó wèntí, bǐzhǔ
shuō chǐ rán wèntí, zhù fāngzìde
wèntí shèngmède.

A: Xiǎnzài zěnmeyáng le?

B: Zōngde lèi shuō xiǎnzài dōu gāo-
de bù cuò le. Wǒ xiǎng zài guò
shínián, dào jǔshí nián dàì, wǒmen
zhèìge chǎng huí zài quángwù gōng-
yè shèngchǎnzhōng zhàn gèng zhòng-
yàode diéi.

A: Hǎojíde.

B: Xiǎnzài wǒ jiù pèi nǐ qu cān-
guǎn ba, wǒmen yǐbiān zǒu yǐbiān
tán, hǎo bu hǎo?

A: Hǎo!
B: Qīng.

After you.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American visitor (A) is reading in his room at the Peking Hotel when a young Chinese technician (B) who has been accompanying the American's tour group knocks at the door.

B: Kēyì jǐnlái ma?

May I come in?

A: Qīng jīn, kuài qīng jǐnlái zuò.

Come in, please come in and sit down.

B: Mín zhōng wǒ yǒu shì?

Was there something in particular you wanted to see me about?

A: Yědiǎnr xiǎo shì, wǒ xiǎng hē nǐ tāntān. Wǒ kánle nǐmen zhěi piān wénzhāng, tímu shì "Zhōnghuá Rénmīn Gōnghéguó Sānshíniān."

Just a small matter I wanted to talk with you about. I've read that article of yours called "Thirty Years of the People's Republic of China."

Wǒ xiǎng jīngguózhè shí sānshíniān de jiānshè, Zhōngguó jīngji shuǐ-píng yǒu hěn dàde tígāo, biānhua zhěnshí bù xiǎo.

I think that after the last thirty years of construction, China's economic level has risen a great deal. The changes have been pretty big.

B: Biānhua shí bù xiǎo, kěshì mùqián wǒmènde jīngjì lǐliàng hái shì bǐ xīduō xiānjīn guójì ā ruòde duō, hái yǒu hěn duō gōngzuò yào zuò.

The changes are big, but at present our economic power is still much weaker than many advanced countries. We still have a lot of work to do.

A: Wénzhiǎngli shuō, cóng shēngchǎn-shǎng kān, Yǐ jiǔ sì jǐn nián de qīng zhòng gōngyè zài guómín jīngjī zhī zhān bǎifǎnzhí sānshí, xiānzhài yǐjīng zhǎn bǎifǎnzhí qǐshì. Zhèiyáng fǎzhǎnxíqu, nóngyè, qīng gōngyè, zhōng gōngyè de guǎnxì zānmèiyáng ne?

In the article it says that from the point of view of production, in 1949 light and heavy industry only occupied thirty percent in the national economy, but now they occupy seventy-five percent. If things keep developing this way, what will happen to the relationship between agriculture, light industry, and heavy industry?


We're not at all worried about that. Right now, doing a good job of the Four Modernizations is the central task of the people of the whole country. In the Four Modernizations, agricultural modernization is the first big job.

A: Zhè gé zhēngcè shì duōde. Jīn jīnián lǐ nóngyè yǒu le fāzhān, qīng gōngyè, zhōng gōngyè zài néng gènzhé fāzhān. Nóngyè xiàndàihuà

That policy is right. It has only been because there has been development in agriculture in the last few years that light and heavy industry
shi yige jìngjì qiángguó zuì qǐmǎ- 

de tífàojiàn.

B: Shì a! Jiù ná Sīchūān lái shuō, 

zìyúan náme duō, kěshì zài qǐshí 
niándài, gōngyè shēngchǎn jiù shì 
shāngbùqù, hái bu shì yǐnweǐ nèng- 
yè shēngchǎn yǒu wèntí.

A: Shì ma. Sīchūān rénkǒu zài quán- 
guó zhǎn dìyǐwèi, chǐ fǎn wèntí 
shì ge dà wèntí.

B: Jǐn jǐnián, Sīchūān qíngkuàng 
biànhua hěn dà. Mín zhèichī yǒu 
jiùhuì qù Sīchūān ma?

A: Yǒu, nǐn ne, nǐn yǒu méiyǒu shí- 
jiān qù?

B: Lǐngdǎo hái máí shuō, bùguō wǒ 
xīnghǎi yǒu jīhuì, gòngqián wǒ 
zài Sīchūān gōngzuòguó liángnián, 
yěxǔ wǒ kěyì gěi nǐmen jiēshǎo 
jiēshào.

B: Nà tài gǎnxìè le. Guǎnyú wǒ 
gǎngcái kāndé nèipíán wénháng, 
wǒ juéde hěn yǒu yǐsì, bùguō 
chǎngchǎng yǒu xiǎode wèntí, dǎi 
mǎfàn nǐmen.

B: Méi wèntí, wǒ hěn gāoxìng hē nǐn 
duō tǎntàn.


Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

This conversation takes place in the Shānghǎi Industrial Exhibition 
Hall. An American (A) visiting the Hall of Light Industry and Textile Industry 
talks with one of the exhibit guides (B).

B: Mín hái yǒu shénme wèntí ma? 

A: Yǒu yīge xiǎo wèntí. Shānghǎi 
jīqī fāngzhī gōngyè shì shénme 
shíhou kāishīyǐde?

B: Hěn zǎo yǐqián jiù yǒu. 

have been able to develop along with 
it. Agricultural modernization is 
the minimum requirement for an eco-

nomic power.

That's right. Take Sīchūān, for 
example. It's so full of resources, 
yet in the seventies, industrial 
production just couldn't go up: again, 
it was on account of problems with 
aricultural production.

Sure. The population of Sīchūān is 
in first place in the whole country. 
The food problem is a big one.

In recent years there have been big 
changes in the situation in Sīchūān. 
Will you have the chance to go to 
Sīchūān this trip?

Yes, and you? Do you have the 
time to go?

The leadership hasn't said yet, but 
I think I'll probably have the chance. 
I once worked in Sīchūān for two 
years. Maybe I could fill you in on 
it.

We'd be so grateful if you could. 
About that article I just read: I 
find it very interesting, but I often 
have little questions I have to 
bother you with.

That's no problem. It's my pleasure 
to talk with you.

It started a long time ago.
A: Nàme, zhèmèi duō nián lái, zài jīshǔ fāngmìng dé fāzhǎn shì bù shì hěn kuài ne?

B: Wǒ xiǎng chuǎntōng fāngzhí gōngyè fāzhǎn bù mān, kěshì nìlóng, huàxiān yǐlède, fāzhǎnde bǐ gōu kuài.

A: Wǒ tīngshuò, Zhōngguó de qīng gōngyè guòqù dōu zài yānhǎi, xiāng Tiānjīn, Shānghǎi, Guǎngdōng yǐdài. Xiànzài nèidé qīngxíng shì bù shì biānhuá yě běn dà le ne?

B: Cóngqián shì nóngrìezūde dīfāng, xiānzài yǒu hěn duō dōu fāzhǎnqǐlái le, yǒu le qīng gōngyè, yǒu de hái yǒu le zhòng gōngyè.

A: Shì de, gèdì qīngkuàng bù tóng, bǐguò yǒu yīge qīngkuàng shì gèdì dōu yǒu de.

B: Shémmé qīngkuàng?

A: Shì a! Jiāngsū yě shì yǐyāng ma, dàde jīnshí gōngyè yě fāzhǎngqǐlái le.

B: Zài guó jīnrián hǎiwàn shìyǒu gōngyè dà fāzhǎn, Shānghǎi, Tiānjīn, Guǎngdōng, Guǎngxī yǐdài jiù gēng rènào le.

A: Zhēndé, dào nèige shíhou, Shānghǎi jiù gēng piāoliǎng le. Wǒ yídīng yào zài lái cánguān.

B: Hǎo a! Huānyíng nín zài lái!

Well, over all these years, has the technological development been very rapid?

I'd say the traditional textile industry has developed rather rapidly, but such things as nylon and synthetic fibers haven't developed fast enough.

I understand that China's light industry used to be all on the coast, for example in the region of Tiānjīn, Shānghǎi, and Guǎngdōng. Has the situation in the interior also changed a great deal now?

Yes. The situation differs from place to place, but there's one thing that's the same everywhere.

What's that?

A lot of places that used to be agricultural regions have now started to develop, and have light industry, or even heavy industry.

Yea! Jiāngsū is the same. A large metal industry has developed there.

In another few years the gulf oil industry will develop greatly. Then Shānghǎi, Tiānjīn, Guǎngdōng, and Guǎngxī will be even busier.

Really, when that time comes, Shānghǎi will be even prettier. I have to come back to visit it again.

Fine! You'll be most welcome!
Unit 6, Reference List

1. A: 毛主席真伟大，中国文化真丰富！
   B: 毛主席好！中国文化真好。

2. A: 你去过新疆吗？
   B: 是的，我去了新疆。

3. A: 你在新疆住了多久了？
   B: 我在新疆住了两年。

4. A: 你去过新疆吗？
   B: 是的，我去了新疆。

5. A: 你在新疆工作吗？
   B: 是的，我在新疆工作。

6. A: 你会说汉语吗？
   B: 是的，我会说汉语。

Chinese is very complicated. It must be very difficult to study?!
Don’t worry! I’m convinced you can learn it very well.
Is the Islam of the Middle East very different from the Islam of Xinjiang?
This is a very difficult question. We can discuss it.
When was Xinjiang united with the interior?
Oh...the first time they were unified was in about 60 B.C.
During the War of Liberation, the PLA liberated Xinjiang, right?
Xinjiang was peacefully liberated. The PLA went to Xinjiang in 1949.
Are living conditions in the five autonomous regions very different from those in the interior?
Well, it’s mainly that transportation is difficult. As for other aspects of daily life, they’re somewhat below standard too.
Did they go to Shanghai on business?
No. We’re on vacation now, remember? Some of the cadres’ families are in Shanghai, so they went home to visit.

*The tapes for this unit incorrectly give the date as 1950. The PLA entered Xinjiang in October 1949, and the whole province was "liberated" by April 1950.*
7. A: Tz! Zhéitiào dītān zhēn mēi! Shi wéiwér dītān ma?
B: Shì. Jiù shì zāi nǐ zuòtiàn cānguǎn dī tàng gōngchǎng zūōdē.

Ah! This carpet is just beautiful! Is it a Uyghur carpet?
Yes. It was made in the factory you visited yesterday.

B: Gèzdī rénmín dōu zài dà gāo shèhuízhùyì ma!

Look, it just got light and the Uyghur peasants have already started to work.
Sure, the people of all nationalities are going all out with socialism!

9. A: Tíngshuō jǐwèi gōngrén jiāo gěi zhèngfǔ jīběn hěn lāo de shū, nǐmen kānguó le ma?
B: Kānguó le. Dōu shì guānyú zhōngguó wěnté, lǐshì wěnté, hěn yǒu yìsī.

I hear that some workers handed a few very old books over to the government. Have you seen them?
Yes. They're about racial and historical problems. They're very interesting.

10. A: Zhēige dǐqūde xīhū yě mǎi fādá!
B: Suǒyì wǒmen zài zhèr bānle hǎojī gōng chǎng dītānchǎng.

This region's livestock farming is so well developed!
That's why we've set up a lot of carpet factories here.

B: Shéi shuòde, wōménde wénzǐ bù shì zāi gāi ma? Yuè gāi yuè jiāndān ma!

Your system of writing is so hard! It makes cultural exchange so difficult!
Says who! Aren't we changing our writing? The more we change it the simpler it is.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY
(not presented on tape)

12. biānjíáng

border area; borderland; frontier; frontier region
Unit 6, Vocabulary List

biānjiāng  border area; borderland; drontier; frontier region
chà  to differ; to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard
chǎng  factory, plant
chū chāi  to go away on business
fàng jià  to have vacation
fūzā (fūzā)  to be complicated
gān  cadre
gōngchǎng  factory, mill, plant, works
gōngren  worker
gōngyuán  the common era; A.D.
gōngyuánhōu  A.D.
gōngyuánqián  B.C.
Hànyǔ  the Chinese language
hèping  peace; to be peaceful
jiǎo  to hand over, to give
jiào  religion, church (bound form)
jiāolí  to exchange; exchange
jiāotōng  traffic; transportation; travel
jiāngfāngjūn  (People's) Liberation Army, P.L.A.
liàng  to be light, to be bright
me (ma)  (pause marker)
měi  to be beautiful
nèidǐ  interior (of a country)
nóngmín  peasant
shāmò  desert
tMolūn  to discuss
tiān liàng  daybreak, dawn; to become light
tóngyī  to unite, to unify
Tz!  Tek (clicking sound with several different uses: disappointment, admiration, hesitation, etc.)
Wéiwéër  the Uyghur (Uighur) nationality
wénsī  writing, script
xiāngxīn  to believe (in); to trust, to be convinced (that)
xìmùyè  livestock farming, animal husbandry
Yīsīlánjiāo  the Islamic religion, Islam
zhànzhēng
Zhèjiāng (Zhéjiāng)

Zhōngdōng
zhōngzú
-zhūyī
zhīzhīqū
-zú

war
(province in eastern China, formerly spelled Chekiang)
the Middle East
race
-ism, principle (bound form)
autonomous region
nationality (bound form)
Unit 6, Reference Notes

1. A: Hányǔ hěn fǔzà, xuéqílài
dāgāi hěn nán?!

B: Fàngxīn ba! Wǒ xiāngxìn
nǐ kěyǐ xuéde hěn hǎo.

Chinese is very complicated. It
must be very difficult to study?!

Don't worry! I'm convinced you
can learn it very well.

Notes on No. 1

Hányǔ: "Chinese language" This is more formal than Zhōngwén.

Shuō Zhōngguó huà bù tài nán,
kěshi yào xuéhǎo Hányǔ jiu
bǐjiāo nán le.

It isn't too hard to speak Chinese,
but if you want to master the
Chinese language, it is more dif-
ficult.

Wǒ liǎngdiǎn zhōng yǒu Hányǔ kè. I have Chinese class at two.

fǔzà: "to be complicated, to be complex" Also pronounced fǔzà.

Nà shì yīge fǔzàde wèntí. That's a complicated question.

xiāngxìn: (1) "to believe in, to have faith in"

Tā xiāngxìn yīge hěn qīguàde
zōngjiāo.

He believes in a very strange
religion.

Wǒ bù xiāngxìn! I don't believe it!

Yǐqián rénmen bù xiāngxìn zhèi-
zhōng shuōfǎ, xiānzǎi xiāng-
xīn le.

People didn't used to believe in
this explanation, but now they
do.

(2) (as used in 1B) "to be convinced, to be certain, to trust that..."

Wǒ xiāngxìn tā yídīng zuòde
hǎo.

I'm certain that he will do a good
job.

2. A: Zhōngdōngde Yīsīlǎnjīào hé
Xīnjīǎngde Yīsīlǎnjīào
shì bù shì hěn bù yìyǎng?

B: Zhèi shì yīge xiāngdāng
fǔzāde wèntí, wǒmen kěyǐ
tāolùn tāolùn.

Is the Islam of the Middle East
very different from the Islam
of Xīnjīǎng?

This is a very difficult question.
We can discuss it.

Notes on No. 2

Zhōngdōng: "the Middle East"
The Middle East region has many countries which have become independent.

Xinjiang: "Islam" -jiao, "religion," goes on the end of words for different religions. The following examples are for comparison, not for memorization:

Tiānzhǔjiao
("heaven-lord-religion")
Xīnjiāo
("New-religion")
Yǒutāi jiao
Fēijiāo
Dàojiāo
Catholicism
Protestantism
Judaism
Buddhism
Taoism (the popular religion, not the philosophy)

Xinjiang: The Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, formerly known as Sinkiang or Chinese Turkestan, is China's westernmost area. The largest of the country's autonomous regions and provinces, Xinjiang makes up one sixth of China's total area. In this vast land of great natural beauty and sharp geographical contrasts, plentiful resources make conditions ideal for the development of industry, agriculture, and livestock farming.

Xinjiang has held an important place in China's politics and economy since ancient times. In the days before the large-scale navigation of the seas, Xinjiang was crossed by the famous "Silk Road," by which economic and cultural ties were maintained between China and other Asian and European countries. During the Western Han period over two thousand years ago, incursions by the Xiāngní (Hsiungmu) led the Chinese central government to a policy of occupying the oasis cities of southern Xinjiang as garrison posts. Xinjiang has been intimately connected with China ever since that time, although their relations have often been turbulent. The Qing dynasty made a province of Xinjiang (the name means "the New Dominion") in 1884. From the Chinese revolution in 1911 until 1949, Xinjiang remained under authoritarian Chinese control at the same time that local nationalist forces were also at work. Communist Chinese forces "liberated" Xinjiang from late 1949 until the spring of 1950. Xinjiang became an autonomous region on October 1, 1955.

Xinjiang is surrounded by mountains: the Altay in the north; the Kunlun in the south and west; and the Tianshan Range, over 200 kilometers wide, which cuts across the center from east to west. Between these mountain ranges are basins of varying sizes. Southern Xinjiang has the Tarim Basin and northern Xinjiang the Jungarian Basin. In addition there are smaller basins such as the Hani and Turfan Basins. All are well-suited to agriculture and livestock farming. Xinjiang fine-wool sheep and Yili horses are famous throughout China. Despite a harsh seven-month winter, the north has its herdsmen who put their horses and sheep to graze on the wide grasslands for the brief summer. In the arid south, too, livestock herding is a major occupation. In agricultural areas, the dry climate makes irrigation indispensable; a full ninety percent of Xinjiang's farmland is irrigated. The areas around Turfan and Hani are famous for their "karez" (kārzǐxìng) irrigation, a system for conveying water from sources under mountain slopes to farmland by means of man-made underground channels. Crops include winter and spring wheat, cotton,
corn, rice and silkworms. But Xinjiang is most celebrated for its fruits—
cantaloupa melons (hǎngguā) from Shānsūn and seedless grapes from Turpan are
available in season in Běijīng's markets. The Tiānshān and Altay Mountains,
covered with evergreen forests, are rich in wildlife and in precious herbs
which go into the making of Chinese medicines. Xinjiang has important deposits
of petroleum (especially at Kāramay [Kēlándī]), coal, iron, gold, jade, and
uranium (in the Altay Mountains). The main industries are petroleum, metal-
lurgy, coal, electric power, chemicals, construction materials, textiles, and
sugar refining.

About half the population of Xinjiang is of the Uygur (Uighur) national-
ity (see the note on Wēiyèr, "Uygur," under number 7), and over forty per-
cent are Hán Chinese. The rest of the population belongs to one of these
ethnic groups: Kazak (Kazakh), Hui (Chinese Moslem), Mongol, Krgyz (Kirghiz),
Xibo (Sibo), Tajik (Tadzhik), Uzbek, Manchu, Daur (Tahur), and Tartar (Tatar).
There are also several hundred Russians. In the north of Xinjiang there is
a Hán majority, and in the south, a Uygur majority. The capital Ürümqi
(Wūlünghi), with a population of 800,000 (1980, est.), is the region's center
for industry, commerce, and transportation. Xinjiang University in Ürümqi
has departments of Chinese, government, history, foreign languages, math,
physics, chemistry, biology, and geography. Kashgar (Chinese Kāshī), ancient
gateway of the silk trade, is still a commercial and craft center. Kuldja
(Chinese Xinjīng) is a commercial center which produces leather and tobacco,
and also has metallurgical and textile industry. Other cities of note are
Kuytun (Chinese Kūfü), Hotan (Hētián), Shīhēzi, and Yarkand (Shāchē).

tóólùn: A verb, "to discuss," or a noun, "discussion."

Rénmen chángháng tóólùn shī-
jièshàng yixiě yǒu yīside
wènti, kěshì shí yě bù zhì-
dào zhēizhòng tóólùn yǒu
shénme yǒng.

Nèige rén bù dì shuō huà,
cónglái bù cānjiā tóólùn.

People often discuss some very inter-
esting questions about the world,
but no one knows of what use this
kind of discussion is.

That person doesn't like to talk.
He never takes part in discussion.

Tóólùnhuí ("discussion-meeting") is a "symposium."

3. A: Xinjīāng hé nèidī shì
shēnmé shǐhòu tōngyì?

B: Wǒ...dìyiè tōngyì chābùdū
shì gōngyuán qián liùshí-
niàn de shǐhòu.

When was Xinjiang united with the
interior?

Uh...the first time they were
unified was in about 60 B.C.

Notes on No. 3

nèidī: "the interior" of a country; modifying a noun, nèidī can be
translated as "inland." e.g., nèidī chéngshì, "inland city."

From the point of view of Xinjiang, a border region, nèidī refers to
China proper; but from the point of view of Bēijīng, Shānghāi, or Guǎngzhōu,
něidí refers to inland regions such as Sìchuān.

Zhōngguó dàbùshén něidí chéngshì gōngyè mǎiyǒu yǎnghùi chéngshìhào nàme rǎdá.

In most inland cities of China, industry is not as developed as in the coastal cities.

tōngyí: As a process verb, "to become united":

Yuènán xiànzhǎi tōngyí le. Vietnam has now been united.

As an action verb, "to unite, to unify, to integrate":

Qín Shǐhuáng tōngyíle Zhōngguó. Qin Shǐhuáng united China.

gōngyuán and gōngyuán qián: "A.D." and "B.C." Literally, gōngyuán is "common era" and gōngyuán qián "before the common era."

222 B.C.

222 B.C.

A.D. 436

the beginning of the Christian era

4. A: Jiēfāng Zhànhéngde shìhòu, During the War of Liberation,
Jiēfāngjūn jiēfāng de, the PLA liberated Xīnjiāng,
Xīnjiāng, shì bu shì? right?

B: Xīnjiāng shì hépíng jiēfāng dé, Xīnjiāng was peacefully liberated.
Jiēfāngjūn shì sījǐu nián dǎo Xīnjiāng qùde. The PLA went to Xīnjiāng in 1949.

Notes on No. 4

Jiēfāngjūn: "the Liberation Army," short for Zhōngguó Rènmín Jiēfāngjūn, the Chinese People's Liberation Army, which in English is usually called the PLA.

hépíng: "peace" (For the first example, you need to know yǐn, a formal word for "and.")

Zhānzhèng yǐ hépíng shì yǐběn hěn hǎode xiǎoshū. War and Peace is a very good novel.

Shìjì hépíngde wèntí shì gèguó rénmín guǎnxìng wèntí. World peace is a question of concern to the people of all nations.

In some idioms, hépíng can be used to modify a noun or a verb. Hépíng jiēfāng, "peacefully liberate," is an example.

*In 221 B.C.*
5. A: Wūge zīzhìqūde shēnghuó qíngkuàng běi nèidǐ chà hěn duō ma?

B: Ne, zhùyào shì jiāotōng bù fāngbiàn. Búde shēnghuó fāngmian yě chà yìdiǎnr.

Notes on No. 5

zīzhìqū: "autonomous region"

Zhōngguó dàlù yǒu wūge zīzhìqū. The Chinese mainland has five autonomous regions.

Zīzhìqūde rénmín dābùfēn shì shǔmòshù mínzú. The people of the autonomous regions are mostly minority nationalities.

chà: (1) (as used in 5A) "to differ," as in

Běijīng shìjīān gěn Niǔ Yú shìjīān chà shìsānge zhōngtōu. Běijīng time and New York time differ by thirteen hours.

(2) (as used in 5B) "to be inferior, to be poor, to be not up to standard":

Wǒde hànyǔ fāyǐn bǐ tāde fāyǐn chà yídiǎnr. My Chinese pronunciation is a little worse than his.

Zhìliàng chà yídiǎnr, bù shì wǒmén de zèrèn. It's not our responsibility that the quality is inferior.

Nèige difāngde qíngkuàng bǐ zhèr chàde duō. Conditions in that place are much worse than here.

Wǒmén de gōngzuò hǎi chàde yuǎn ne. Our work is a long way from what it should be.

(3) "to lack"

Bú gōu, hái chà sāngé. There aren't enough. There are still three too few.

*The five autonomous regions (AR) are

Nēimínggǔ Zīzhīqū the Inner Mongolia (or Nei Monggol) AR
Níngxià Hūfǔ Zīzhīqū the Níngxià Hūf AR
Xīnjiāng Wéiwǔèr Zīzhīqū the Xīnjiāng Uygyur AR
Guǎngxī Zhuāngzú Zīzhīqū the Guǎngxī Zhuāng AR
Xīzàng Zīzhīqū the Tibet AR
jiāotōng: "traffic," "transportation"

Zhèlǐde jiāotōng bù ānquán, qīchē tài duō, kǎiē tài kuài. The traffic here isn't safe. There are too many cars, and they go too fast.

Qǐng nǐ zhāo yīge jiāotōng jīngchá lái. Please go get a traffic officer.

zhùyào shì... "it's mainly that..." or "it's mainly because...

Zhùyào shì Zhōngguó de lǐngdào rén bù dǒng jīngjì, gōngyè fāzhǎn cái nàme màn. It's mainly because China's leaders do not understand economics that industrial development has been so slow.

me (also pronounced mē): "as for," "...well,..." This colloquial word marks a pause and sets off the topic of a sentence. It is often used when the speaker is hesitating about exactly what to comment on the topic.

Tā zài wènmù fāngmiàn mē... kěyì shuō hēn bù cuò, kěshì shūmū fāngmiàn kě zhēn chà. In the area of literature...he can be said to be quite good, but he's really poor in mathematics.

Zhōngguó de zhòng gōngyè jiānshè me...zhèi jīn nián hǎi suān kěyì le. As for China's heavy industrial construction...it has not been too bad the past few years.

Rúguǒ tā bù yuǎnyī mē, nà jìu suān le. If he's unwilling, well, then let the matter drop.

6. A: Tāmen shì dào Shànghǎi qù chū zhāi ma? Did they go to Shànghǎi on business?

B: Bù, bù shì fàng jiā le ma? Yóu duō gānbùde jiā zài Shànghǎi, tāmen hùi jiā qù kānkàn. No. We're on vacation now, remember? Some of the cadres' families are in Shànghǎi, so they went home to visit.

Notes on No. 6

chū zhāi: "to go/be away on official business" (For this example, you need to know Sū-Háng, an abbreviation for Sūzhōu and Hángzhōu.)

Dàjiā dōu xīhuān chū zhāi qù Sū-Háng yǐdài, kěyì duō yīxiě jīhui yǔshūn. Everyone likes to go on business to the Sūzhōu-Hángzhōu region, (because) one can have more opportunities to do sightseeing.

fàng jiā: "to let out for vacation" or "to have vacation, to be on vacation" Here are examples of the first meaning:
What day does your school let out for vacation?

Vacation has started; why are you still going to work?

Here are examples referring to the state of being on vacation:

This week we are on vacation.

We can only be together when we are on vacation.

The length of time the vacation lasts is expressed by a time phrase modifying the object jià:

Last year we had three weeks of vacation, but this year we only have two weeks.

Schools have one day of vacation on October 1.

bù shì...ma?: This has both a literal and a rhetorical use. In 6B you see the rhetorical use.

(1) Literal use: "isn’t...?, don’t...?," etc.
(2) Rhetorical use: "you know, you will recall, remember" Use this to remind the listener of a fact you know he is aware of (although he may have forgotten it).

Contrast the literal and rhetorical use of this pattern:

LITERAL: Wǒ bù shì yǒu yīge měimei zài Shànghǎi ma? Don’t you have a younger sister in Shànghǎi? (CHECKING INFORMATION)

Rhetorical: Wǒ bù shì yǒu yīge měimei zài Shànghǎi ma? You’ll recall that I have a younger sister in Shànghǎi. (REMININDING)

Further examples:

(LITERAL)

Mǐ bù shì shuō yào qù ma? Zěnme yīu bù qù le ne? Didn’t you say you were going to go? How come you aren’t going now?

(Rhetorical)

Wǒ bù shì yǐjīng xiěwánle ma? Wèishénme hái ràng wǒ xiě? I’ve finished writing it, you know. Why do you still want me to write?
Wǒ bú shì gèn nǐ shuōguo ma? Wǒ xiàwǔ yào kāi huì, méi shìjiān.

Haven't I told you? I have a meeting this afternoon and don't have time.

Xílà diàntí, wàng yǒu zǒu, bú shì yǒu ge cānchí ma? Wǒmen jīlì zài nàr jiàn miàn, hǎo bu hǎo?

When you get off the elevator and go to the right, there's a restaurant, you know? We'll meet there, okay?

Bú shì ma? may also be put onto the end of a sentence:

Wǒmen fāng jià le, bú shì ma? Wǒmen fāng jià le, bú shì ma? We're on vacation, remember?

7. A: Tz! Zhètīrī dìtān zhēn měi! Shì Wéiyūr dìtān ma?

Ah! This carpet is just beautiful! Is it a Uygur carpet?

B: Shī. Jiù shì zài nǐ zúòtiān cānguāngde nèige gōngchǎng zǔde.

Yes. It was made in the factory you visited yesterday.

Notes on No. 7

Tz!: This sound is just like the clicking of the tongue sometimes written in English as "tsk." As in English, it can be used to express disappointment or chiding, but in Chinese it can also be used to express admiration, as when describing a beautiful house, a dish of food, or a smartly dressed person.

měi: "to be beautiful"

Xìà dà xuě le, nǐ kàn wàibiàn duō měi.

It has snowed a lot. Look at how beautiful it is outside.

Zhàopiānshāng tā zhēn měi.

She looks beautiful in the photograph.

Wéiyūr: The Uygur, or Uighur, a Turkic people who, with a population of six million, constitute one of China's largest national minorities. Their early history, like that of other peoples of central Asia, is unrecorded. Some scholars have hypothesized that their origins were Indo-European rather than Turkic. At any rate, they emerge into the light of history in the Táng dynasty. At that time, they were a nomadic people well known to the Chinese; in fact, they helped the Táng overthrow a hostile Turkic empire in Mongolia in 744. The Uygurs, in turn, established an empire in the area, but this lasted only until 840, when the wild Kergez sacked their capital and killed their khan. A portion of their population then migrated westward to the oases of the Tarim Basin. There, they mixed with the local Turkic population, and although the Uygur racial strain dominated, they adopted the Turkic language and no longer called themselves Uygurs. Gradually, their occupation shifted from nomadic herding to farming. The resulting stability allowed a great development in their literature and arts, especially song and dance. In the tenth century, closer contact with merchants, travelers, and settlers from the Middle East stimulated their conversion to Islam, a process which took several centuries to complete.
Modern times have witnessed the emergence of Uygur nationalism, reflected in their official readoption of the historical name "Uygur" earlier in this century. Uygur leaders have often resisted control by outside powers, and even attempted to establish an independent republic in the region. Under Chinese authority today, the Uygurs, who remain for the most part a farming people living and marrying within the village unit, have a limited degree of regional autonomy and are guaranteed cultural freedom and linguistic rights by the PRC Constitution.

   Ñeâng ēr nónɡmín jiù kāishì gōnɡzuò le. 
   Look, it just got light and the Uygur peasants have already started to work.

   B: Gěi rénmín dōu zài dà gǎo shēhuìzhìyì ma! 
   Sure, the people of all nationalities are going all out with socialism!

Notes on No. 8

liàng: "to be bright, to be light" or "to be shiny"

Zhèige dāng bù liàng le. 
This light won't go on.

Nǐde xīn chē zhēn liàng a! 
Your new car is really shiny!

Tiān liàng means "to get light out" or "daybreak, dawn":

Tiān liàng yǐhòu, jīéshàng jiù rè'naoqilai le. 
After it got light out, the streets started to liven up.

Tiān liàng yǐqián néng dào ma? 
Can we get there before dawn?

gāng...jīù...: "just (hardly)...and already..."

Tā gāng dàxué biyè jīù dào Xīběi qū le. 
He went to the Northwest when he had just graduated from college.

Zhèige báizi gāng lái Měiguó sāngé yuè, jiù huǐ shuō bù shǎo Yīngwén le. 
It has been barely three months since this child came to the U.S., and already she can speak a lot of English.

Zhèige xuǎnqí gāng kāishì, wǒmén jīù juèdé bāoxiāng guòlè hěn chǎng shìjiān le. 
The semester had barely started when we felt as if a long time had already passed.

nónɡmín: "peasant," as contrasted with non-ideological terms like nónɡfū, "farmer," or nónɡyuè kōngren, "agricultural worker."

Zhōngguóde nónɡmín zhèn quānguó rènkǒude bāifēnzhī bāshí. 
China's peasants make up 80 percent of the population of the whole country.

157
TVL, Unit 6

-ζú: "nationality," as in Wéiyǔζú, "the Uygur nationality," Hánζú, "the Han nationality," Mèngζú, "the Mongol (Mongolian) nationality."

-zhǔyì: "doctrine" or "-ism," as in Gōngchǎnzhǔyì, "Communism"; Hépíngzhǔyì, "pacifism"; Mínzǔzhǔyì, "nationalism"; Dàwéngzhǔyì, "Darwinism."

dà gāo shèhuízhǔyì: "go all out with socialism; engage in socialism in a big way" The adjectival verb dà, "to be large," is used here as an adverb. [Adverbs modify verbs or other adverbs.] When so used, it means "in a big way" or "go all out with (doing something)"

Jiānhūn de shì hou yě bù yào dà chī dà hē.

"Dà Bān Róngyí." "Make Great Efforts to Develop Agriculture." (slogan)

Even when one gets married, one shouldn’t put on a great feast.

9. A: Tíngshūō jīnéi gōngrén jiāo gěi zhēngguó jībēn hěn lāo de shū, nǐmén kāngguò le ma?

I hear that some workers handed a few very old books over to the government. Have you seen them?

B: Kāngguò le. Dōu shì guǎnyú zhōngguó wēntí, lǐshǐ wēntíde, hěn yǒu yìsì.

Yes. They’re about racial and historical problems. They’re very interesting.

Notes on No. 9

gōngrén: This is the general term for "worker" in the sense of a wage-earning laborer. (Gōngzuòzhī, which you learned in Unit 4, does not imply manual labor; it simply means someone who works in a particular field, such as education or archeology.) Examples: shīyōu gōngrén, "oil worker"; nángyè gōngrén, "agricultural worker," for example, a wage-earning worker on a state farm; tiězhà gōngrén, "railroad worker."

jiāo: "to hand over, to give" Jiāo qián is "to pay" (a fee or bill, especially one which is due regularly).

Wǒ hái méi jiāo zhùjīng yuè de fángzhū.

I haven’t paid this month’s rent yet.

Jiāo gěi wǒmen ba! Nǐ fāngxīn hǎo le!

Leave it to us! Don’t worry about it! (Here jiāo refers to turning over a task to someone.)

zhēngzuò: "race" or "racial." Examples are Huángzhōngrén, "people of the yellow (Oriental) race," Hǎizhōngrén, "people of the black race," and Báizhōngrén, "people of the white race."
10. A: Zhège diquè xīmuyè nàme fādá!
   This region's livestock farming is so well developed!

   B: Suōyī wǒmen zài zèrè bānle bāojīge ditānchāng.
   That's why we've set up a lot of carpet factories here.

Notes on No. 10

Suōyī . . .: Notice that when stressed at the beginning of a sentence, suōyī is translated as "That's why . . . ."

chǎng and gōngchǎng: Gōngchǎng (introduced in No. 7 above) is the generic term for a factory or plant. If you were talking about the installations in an area and wanted to say that there were schools, factories, and hospitals, you would use gōngchǎng. Chǎng, on the other hand, is only used in specific contexts. If you are talking about a specific factory, you can say chānglǐ for "in the factory." A worker can say wǒmen chǎng for "our factory." You can also use chǎng in certain compound nouns which specify what the factory makes, as in ditānchāng.

11. A: Wǎnmènde wénzì nàme nán!
   Gāo wénhuà jiāolì duō bù róngyi.
   Your system of writing is so hard! It makes cultural exchange so difficult!

   B: Shéi shuōde, wǒmen wénzì bù shì zài gāi ma? Yuè gāi yuè jiāndān ma!
   Says who! Aren't we changing our writing? The more we change it the simpler it is.

Notes on No. 11

wénzì: "writing," "written language," "script," "system of writing." For example, a member of China's Committee for Reform of the Written Language would be a wénzì gōngzuōzhē, "written language worker."

jiāolì: "to exchange" or "an exchange," "interchange" This is only used to refer to a back-and-forth flow of culture, technology, experience, thought, and so forth. "To exchange" one thing for another is huàn [or jiāo huàn in formal contexts such as the exchange of views or of prisoners].

shéi shuōde: "Says who!" This is strictly informal and could be taken as impolite if used in an inappropriate context.

zì gāi: "in the process of changing"

bù shì . . . ma?: This is another example of the rhetorical use of this pattern (see the Notes on No. 6): "We're changing our writing, aren't we?!"
12. biānjiāng  

biānjiāng: "frontier region, border region" This refers to the area inside the border. Biānjiē refers more specifically to the border or boundary itself.
Unit 6, Review Dialogue

In a soft berth car on the express train from Bēijīng to Ürūmqi (Wūlū-mùqí) in the Xīnjiāng Uyghur Autonomous Region, an American ethnologist, Gail Griffith (G), is standing in the corridor looking out the window at the passing scenery. Lí Míng (L), a cadre in the Ministry of Foreign Trade, steps out of the neighboring compartment, a glass of tea in his hand.

L: Zǎoshang hǎo!  
G: Zǎoshang hǎo! Nín guìxing?  
L: Wǒ xǐng Lí, zài Bēijīng wǒ jiānguò nǐn.  
G: Zài Bēijīng? Shènme dīfang?  
L: Qīyuè shìhào wǎnshang, zài Wēiguó Dāshīguān.  
G: À! Qīyuè shìhào, nèitiān nǐ de năr gōngzuò a?  
G: Bù zhī shì yǔyānxué, wǒ hái yán-jiù mínzú wèntí, zhōngzú wèntí.  
L: Ó! Dào Xīnjiāng qù yánjū mínzu wèntí ma?  
G: Bù, wǒ shì xiāng dù liào jī yīdiǎnr Wèiwūr wēnhuá hé Zhōng- dōng wēnhuá guānxi.  
L: Ó! Zhēi kě shì yīge fūzāde wēntí, wǒ bù shì lǐshǐ xuéjiā, guānyú zhēige wǒ, wǒ zhīdàode bù tài duō.  
G: Xīměn zōng bǐ wǒmen zhīdàode duō, jiù qīng nǐn jiānjǐng bā.  
L: Wǒ zhīdào cōngjīn Wèiwūr rén yòugè wēnzhī shì Zhōngdōng, yǒu shì dào xiānzài, zài Xīnjiāng Wèiwūr Zhīzhīguó xuéxiǎoli hǎishì jiào Wèiwūr wén.  

Good morning!  
Good morning! May I ask your name?  
My name is Lí. I met you in Bēijīng.  
In Bēijīng? Where?  
On the evening of July fourth, at the American Embassy.  
Ah! July fourth. There were so many people that day, I don't remember. Where do you work?  
The Ministry of Foreign Trade. That day, a lot of cadres from the Ministry of Foreign Trade went; you wouldn't remember. I seem to remember that you are in linguistics.  
Not only linguistics. I also study national and racial issues.  
Oh! Are you going to Xīnjiāng to do research on nationalities?  
No. I want to get a better understanding of the relationship between Uyghur culture and Chinese culture.  
Oh! That's certainly a complex question. I'm not a historian. On that topic...I don't know very much.  
But you know more than we do, in any case, so please tell me about it.  
I know that the writing which the Uyghurs used to use was Middle Eastern. Even now, they still teach the Uyghur language in the schools in the Xīn- jīāng Uyghur Autonomous Region.
G: 你每天都说维吾尔人懂 汉语吗？

L: 大概他们都说effenzihe 也是。

G: 你，他们你们国家 为什么他说汉 语不 懂呢？

L: 维吾尔人懂从睡 信义 圣经。中国的 教育部 zyjuo guojia, suoyi zai zhengce shang hui yu yixie he neo- di bu tongde banfa.

G: 你，你们说 他们懂语言 万 咦是不好？

L: 好的！

G: 谢谢你们维吾尔文 你学 xin wenzi le.

L: 你，xin wenzi shi yi jiu qi wu niang kaishiyongde. Zhe zhongxin xin wenzi xiqilai biliang rongyi, cong nedi lai Xinjiangde ren xuexilai ye rongyide duo.

G: 你学 xin wenzi yihou维吾尔语 ren juede zemmeyang? Tamen heng gaoxing ma?

L: Zhongguo shi yige duou minzu de shenhuzhuyi da jiating, Weiwuer renmin yu syo tongyide ma! Yule xin wenzi, Hanzu he shaozhu minzu de wenhua jialing ye rongyi- do le ma!

G: Yi shuo de you douyi. Du le, ni ke bu keyi gao su w6 Xinjiang ren- koude qingkuang?

L: Xianzai Xinjiang you jiubaiwan ren zuoyou, yihou hui geng duo.

G: Shaozhu minzu you doushao ne?

L: Chabuduq qibai duowan, erqiie zhei Somewhere over seven million. And
qǐbǐ duō wàn rén lǐ yǒu shǐ sāngé mínzuú.

G: Óu. Xīnjiāng shǎoshū mínzuú gèn Hánzuó de jiāolì yǔ duō jǔ le?

L: Xīnjiāng dǐqù hé nèidié jīngji jiāolì yǐjīng yǒu jìqiānnián de lǐshǐ le, yòng wénti xǐxiālài de jīngji wénhuà jiāolì shì cóng gōngyuán qián liùbāi nián zuò yǒu kěshìde. Gōngyuán qián liùshí nián jīngguò jìcì zhǎnhéng yǐhòu Xīnjiāng hē nèidi tōngyì le, wénhuà, yishùde jiāolì yě jiù yuè lái yuè duō le.

G: Wǒ tíngshuō jǐshèng yǐhòu yǒu hěn duō rén bān dào Xīnjiāng lái zhù le.


G: Nǎme zhěxiē jiānshè biānjiāngde niánqīng rén dōu shì cóng nàr lái-de ne?

L: Duóbānr shì Tiānjīn, Běijīng, Shānghǎi, Zhāijīng de qīngnián.

G: Tāmén hǎi kěyì hūn dà chénghū ma?

L: Xiànnǎi jiāótōng fāngbiàn, fàngjiāde shíhòu tāmén kěyì hūn láojīa kānkān. Duóbānrde niánqīng rén zài zhělǐ jiēsè hūn, yōule hěi zì tāmén yǐjīng shì Xīnjiāng rén le!

G: Tāmén zài zhělǐ zuò shénme? Jiù gǎo nónghè ma?

among these seven million people there are thirteen nationalities.

Oh. How long has there been interchange between the minority nationalities of Xīnjiāng and the Han people?

Economic interchange between the Xīnjiāng region and the interior has been going on for several thousand years. Economic and cultural interchange which was put down in writing began around 600 B.C. In 60 B.C., after several wars, Xīnjiāng was united with the interior, and there began to be more and more cultural and artistic interchange.

I understand that many people have moved to Xīnjiāng since liberation.

In 1950, Xīnjiāng was peacefully liberated. After the PLA arrived here, they carried on economic construction with the peasants. Since 1962, every year, a lot of young people have come here. Back then, life in the border region was much worse than in the interior; but now, construction has been pretty well carried out.

And where have all these young people who are carrying on the construction of the borderlands come from?

Most of them are youth from Tiānjīn, Běijīng, Shānghǎi, and Zhāijīng.

Can they still go back to the big cities?

Now, transportation is convenient, so when they have vacation, they can go back to visit their original home. Most of the young people have married here and have children; they have already become Xīnjiāng natives!

What do they do here? Just farming?
L: Ò! Bù dōu shì gào'nóngyè. Yè yǒu de shí gōngrèn, yè yǒu de gào wénhuà jiāoyú gōngzuò, hái yǒu de gào xùmùyè..

G: Duì le, suírán Xīnjiāng yǒu hěn dà de shāmō, kěshì xùmùyè hái shì hěn fādáde.

L: Yǐ jiànguó Xīnjiāngde dìtān meiyǒu?

G: Zài zhǎnlǎnshìhǎng jiànguó. Tz! Zhēn měi! Duō měi de dìtān!

L: Méinián Xīnjiāng dìqū jiāo gěi guójì bù shǎo dìtān. Tā men de shēngchǎn qǐngkuǎng bù cuò, shǔliàng bù shǎo, zhīliàng yě hěn gāo, wǎngguó pèngyǒu hěn xīhuan měi.

G: À! Wǒ zhīdào le, nǐ shì dào Xīnjiāng qu chūchāi de ba!

L: Duì le. Qū hé jī gé dìtānchāng tāolùn míngniǎn de shēngchǎn jīhuà.

G: Zheīxiē dìtānchāng kě bù kěyǐ cānguān ma?


G: Duìbuqǐ, nǐde biǎo xiànzài yídān le? Wǒde biǎo hǎoxíàng kuài le ma.

L: Zhōngwǔ shìjiāndīn.

G: Wǒ zěmě juéde tiān liàngle bù jiǔ a.

L: Mín bì wàng le, zhèrde shíjiān hě Běijīng chā sīge zhōngtōu ne!

G: Zěnme chā sīge zhōngtōu?

---

L: Oh, not all of them. Some are workers, some do cultural and educational work, and some do livestock farming.

G: Oh, yes; although Xinjiang has a big desert, livestock farming is still very well developed.

L: Have you ever seen Xinjiang carpets?

G: At an exhibition. Gee! They're really beautiful! Such beautiful carpets!

L: Every year the Xinjiang region hands over quite a few carpets to the state. They are doing well in production; they produce quite a number of carpets, and the quality is also very high. Foreign friends love to buy them.

G: Ah! Now I know: I bet you're going to Xinjiang on business!

L: Right. I'm going to discuss next year's production plan with a few carpet factories.

G: Can one visit these carpet factories?

L: Of course! You are very welcome to visit! Talk to the Travel Service about it, and they'll make the arrangements.

G: Excuse me—what time do you have? My watch seems to be fast.

L: Twelve noon.

G: How come I feel as if it's only been light out for a little while?

L: Don't forget, there's a four-hour time difference between here and Beijing!

G: How is that?
L: Zài Běijīng qìdiǎn zhōng tiān jiù liàng le, zài zhèr Běijīng shíjiān shíyīdiǎn tiān cāi liàng ne!

G: Duíle, duíle... 6u, quánguǒ dōu tōngyíde yòng Běijīng shíjiān ma? Zhèi hě Měiguó bù yìyáng, Měiguó yǒu sīge shíjiān ne....

Xiànzaí wǒmen yǐjīng zài huǒchē shàng guòle qǐshíge zhōngtóu le! Shénme shíhòu kěyǐ dào Wūlínqí ya?

L: Hái yǒu bā ge zhōngtóu ne. Hǎo le, zhǎnlèi le ba, wǒ gāi hūfū qǐ xǐuxǐ yǐhuī le. Hūfū tóu jiān!

G: Hūfū tóu jiān, Lǐ Xiānshēng.

L: In Běijīng it gets light at seven o'clock. Here, it doesn't get light until eleven o'clock Běijīng time!

G: I see, I see...hm, Běijīng time is used throughout the country? That's different from America. America has four times....

L: Now we've already spent seventy hours on the train! What time will we get to Wūlínqí?

G: We still have another eight hours. Well, you must be tired of standing up. I should go back and rest a bit. See you later!

L: See you later, Mr. Lǐ.
Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American visits the Central Nationalities Institute in Beijing and talks with a Uygur student.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

- xuéyuàn  academy, institute
- Tūērqī  Turkey, Turkish
- Ālābō  Arab, Arabic
- Lādīng zimum  Latin (Roman) alphabet
- sīxiāng  thought, ideas
- xīn jiāo  to believe in a religion
- zuò lǐbāi  to worship; to attend a religious service
- qīngzhēnsī  mosque

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Are the minority nationality languages used in schools in Xinjiang?
2. What does the Uygur student say his native language is like?
3. Do more Uygurs understand Chinese or Russian?
4. What is the Uygur student's religious background?

5. Now that she is in Bēijing, is the Uygur student able to attend religious services?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American tourist talks with a China Travel Service worker on the train from Bēijing to Hohhot, Inner Mongolia.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jīning (Jìning)</th>
<th>(city in Inner Mongolia)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sān bù</td>
<td>to go for a walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huángtǔ gāoyuán</td>
<td>loess plateau (see map at the end of this unit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mínzú zhījiān</td>
<td>between nationalities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xīfāng</td>
<td>the West</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāoqǐǔ</td>
<td>to require</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎishān</td>
<td>to improve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dàtōng</td>
<td>(city in Shānxī province)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chāxiǎng</td>
<td>car (of a train)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. In history, was the Jīning region a peaceful one?

2. What is the China Travel Service worker's attitude toward the national minorities of China?
3. How might you respond to questions about racial difficulties in the U.S.? (Use several sentences from the dialogue, or prepare answers in your own words.)

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you practice saying the answers you have prepared.

**Exercise 4**

This is a conversation between an American tourist and a young Chinese woman who meet at the Museum of Chinese History in Beijing.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

- náxí: to take away, to move (something) out of the way
- gǔdíshǐ: ancient history
- huángdì: emperor
- Qìnghǎi: (name of a province)
- dāng: to act as, to be
- hánshòubān: correspondence course
- kǎoshàng: to pass (an examination)
- zìxué: to study by oneself
- ànshí: on time
- zuòyè: homework
- chénggōng: to succeed

**Questions for Exercise 4**

1. Why is the young woman taking down notes?

2. How are living conditions in Qìnghǎi?

3. What does the young woman do for a living in Qìnghǎi?

4. What other kinds of work has she done before?

5. Why does she want to go to college?
After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American (A) visits the Central Nationalities Institute in Beijing and talks with a Uyghur student (U).

U: Mín hǎo! Huányíng nín lái wǒmen xuéyuàn cānguān.
   Hello! Welcome to the Institute.

A: Nǐde Hányǔ hěn hǎo ma, shì zài Běijīng xuéde ma?
   Your Chinese is very good! Did you learn it in Beijing?

U: Zhǔyào shì zài Běijīng xuéde, kěshì bù shì zài Běijīng kǎishǐ xuéde.
   Mainly, but I wasn't in Beijing when I started learning it.

A: Ó, zài Xīnjiāng Wéiwùr Zìzhìquè xuéxiào lǐ yě jiào Hányǔ, shì bù shì?
   Oh. They teach Chinese in schools in the Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, do they?

U: Zài zìzhìquè zhōng- xiǎoxué lǐ chūhǎi Hánzi xuéxiào yìwǎi dōu jiào shàoshù mínzú wénzì, tèbǐ shì Wéiwùr wénzì.
   Except for the Hán nationality schools, secondary and primary schools in the autonomous region teach the minority nationality languages, especially the Uyghur language.

A: Wéiwùr wénzì hé Zhōngguóngdú wénzì yǒu shénme guānxì ma?
   Is the Uyghur language related to the languages of the Middle East?

   Yes. Uyghur is rather close to Turkish. The old Uyghur writing system was basically an Arabic writing system. The new writing system uses the Roman alphabet.

A: Nàme xiàng "Gōngchǎndǎng," "Shè- huízhǔyì" zěi zěměi bān néi?
   Well, how do they handle words like "the Communist Party" and "socialism"?

U: Zhèxìe zìdé fāyīn dūbān xiàng Hányǔ, huōzhē xiàng Ŝuǐ.
   The pronunciation of words like that is mostly like Chinese, or like Russian.

A: Dūihuǐ, Wéiwùr rèn dōng Hányǔde duǒ ne, bāishì dōng Ŝuǐde duǒ ne?
   I'm sorry: Do more Uyghurs understand Chinese or Russian?

U: Yībǎnè dé lái shū, hái shì dōng Ŝuǐde rèn duǒ.
   Generally speaking, there are still more who understand Russian.

A: Duì le--nǐ gāngcái bù shì shuò nǐde Hányǔ bù shì zài Běijīng kǎishǐ xuéde ma?
   Oh—-you just said that you didn't begin studying Chinese in Beijing, right?

U: Wǒmen lái Běijīng niànlà xuéduō shàohǎo mínzú xuéshèng dōu kěyí zài zìzhìquè Hánzú xuéxiào lǐ xiān xué yǐnián Hányǔ. Zài xué Hányǔ
   All of us minority students who come to Beijing to attend college can take a year of Chinese language beforehand in a Hán nationality school in
yīqián, wǒ liǎn yīge Hánzǐ dōu bù zhídào.

A: Hányǔ shì hěn fūzáo, xuéqílai dāgāi hěn nán.

U: Bù juēde zěnme tài nán, xuéle yīnliǎn yīhòu wōmen hé nárde Hánzǐ gōngrèn, gānbù, yǒng Hányǔ tǎolùn wéntí, jiāolǐ sīxiāng dōu méiyǒu shénme wéntí le.

A: Tz! Nè zhēn bù cuò. Duì le—wǒ hái yǒu zuìhòu yīge xiǎo wéntí. Nǐmen xīn jiào ma?

U: Wǒmen de fūmǔ, zǔfūmǔ dōu xiǎngxīn Yīsīlánjiāo.

A: Nǐmen zǐjǐ ne?

U: Wǒmen zǐjǐ me, yǒu xīn, yǒu xīn bù tài xīn, wǒ hái shì xiǎngxīn de.

A: Zài Běijīng yě kěyì zuò lǐbài ma?


A: Tāi xièxiè zǐ le, gěi wǒ jiēshāo le zhème duō yōu yīside qīngkuāng.


A: Zàijiān.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

On the train from Běijīng to Hohhot, Inner Mongolia, an American tourist (A) talks with a China Travel Service worker (B).

B: Tiān gāng liǎng nín jiù qǐlái le? Bù duō shuǐ yīhuí?

A: Bù xiǎng shuì le. Xiàmian yǐzhàn shì nár le?

B: Jǐnīng, zhě shì yīge dà zhàn, huǒchē zài zhèr tíng èrshīfēn Jǐnīng. It's a big stop. The train will stop there for twenty minutes.
zhōng. Wǒmen kěyǐ dào zhāntái-
shang qu sānsān bǐ.

A: Jīnǐng yīdiāi shì yīge zhōngyāode
dǐqū.

B: Cōng dīxīngshàng kàn, Jīnǐng běi-
bīn fā shì dà shāmā, nánbīn fā shì
huángtǔ gācyuán. Gōngyuán qiánzhī
zài zhēge dǐqū bù zhídào yǒu yuē
duōshǎo cí zhānhēng.

A: Xiànzài hēpíng le, biānjíng hé
nàidi bù huì yǒu zhānhēng le.

B: Mín shuōde duì, zhōngguó shì yīge
duō mínzú de, tōngyīde shēnhuìzhīyī
dà jīnǐng, mínzú zhījiàn de zhān-
hēng dōu yǐjīng shì lǐshǐ le.
Tīngzhōu, zài xīfāng, zhōngguó wèntī,
mínzú wèntī hǎi shì hěn méifānde
wèntī a? Shēnghuò mínzú shēnghuò
hě diāwei hǎi hěn chā?

A: Wǒ xiāng zài yībānián yīqiān de
shēnchōu, zhōngguó wèntī shì yīge bì-
jiào dài wèntī, xiànzài qīngkuàng
yǐjīng yǒu hěn dà de gābiàn.

B: Shì ma?

A: Wǒmen de zhēngfǔ yǐqǐ zhēngfǔ
ghōngzuò rényuán děi yǒu yìdīng shū-
língde shāoshū mínzú. Zài wǒmen
xuéxī de duì shāoshū mínzú yě yǒu
tèbié de bāngzhù.

B: Nánguó zài jīnǐng sān
pīng, gōngjué shǐhòu shū-
pǐng fāngmìng shāoshū mínzú de qīng-
kuàng dōu gāi shǐbān le?

A: Wǒ xiāng mínzú wèntī, zhōngguó
wèntī yǒu lìshǐde yuǎnyīn, yě yǒu
zhēngzhì, jīngjí, wēnhuà gēfàng-

We can go out for a walk on the plat-
form.

The Jīnǐng area is an important
region.

As far as terrain is concerned, to
the north of Jīnǐng is a big desert,
and to the south is the loess plateau.
Before and during the Christian era
there have been I-don't-know how many
wars in this region.

But now it's at peace. The border
regions and the interior won't have
any more wars.

That's right. China is a unified
socialist family made up of many na-
tionalities. War between these groups is
already a thing of the past. I hear
that in the West, racial and ethnic
problems are still very troublesome,
and that the living conditions and
status of minorities are still very
inferior.

I think that the race problem was
bigger a hundred years ago. The
situation has already changed quite a
lot.

Is that so?

Our government requires that their
employees include a certain number of
minority individuals. In our
schools minorities are also given
special help.

Then as far as levels of education,
job opportunities, and standard of
living are concerned, do you think
that the minority situation has
improved in all these areas?

I think that ethnic and racial prob-
lems have historical causes, as well
as political, economic, and cultural

*Speaker A on the tape says Jīnǐng, which is another pronunciation. The
dictionary pronunciation is Jīning.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise

At an exhibition on general Chinese history in Bēijīng's Museum of Chinese History, a young woman (B) is sitting on a bench taking some notes. When an American tourist (A) walks by, the young woman gets up to let him have her seat.

A: Nǐ zài xiē dōngxī, kūlǐ qīng zuòxià, bù yào kēqi.

You're writing, please sit down. Don't be polite.

B: Wǒ lái bā zhè shì yīběn shū pàkāi, nǐn zuòxià xiūxīxiūxī.

I'll move these books away and you can sit down and rest.

A: Zhēibiān Zhōngguó Guǎnshì shì nǐde ma?

Is this History of Ancient China yours?

B: Shì wǒde. Zhēibiān shūlǐ guǎnyù yīwéi Tángcháo huángdì de lǐbèi zhègè zhǎnlǎnhuíshāng shuōde bā tài yìyàng, suǒyǐ wǒ bā ta xiāxiālái dāihuì kuǎnkàn.

Yes, it is. There are some differences between the version of a story about a Táng dynasty emperor in this book and the version given in the exhibit, so I'm writing it down to take home and read.

A: Nǐ shì Běifāng rèn ma?

Are you from the north?

B: Wǒ làojiā zài Zhèjiāng, xiānzài zài Qīnghǎi gōngzuò, zhēcì shí lǎi Běijīng chúxíhái.

Originally I'm from Zhèjiāng, but now I work in Qīnghǎi. This time I'm in Běijīng on business.

A: Qīnghǎi's shì lǐxùn fáng ci shì yì fēi yì zhǎnshì le, bù shì ba?

Qīnghǎi's livestock farming is very developed, isn't it?
Livestock farming is doing well, but the situation isn't as good as in Inner Mongolia and Xinjiang.

How is the people's standard of living?

The food is rather poor, but the main thing is that transportation is difficult. As for other aspects of life, well, they aren't as good as in the interior either.

What is your work in Qinghai?

I've been a peasant and I've been in the P.L.A. Now I'm a worker in a construction materials factory.

Mm, you've done a lot of things.

These days a lot of young people are like that. But I'm still most interested in history.

Do you want to go to college to study history?

Yes, I do. Oh, do you read the Chinese newspapers?

Yes.

Have you been reading the People's Daily the last couple of days?

Yes. It said in the paper that a lot of colleges are going to start correspondence courses.

Right, so I'm preparing to take the exams here.

How do you go about attending these colleges?

After we pass the exam, the school sends us the books and other study materials, and we study on our own, turning in our homework and tests when required. When I have vacation from the factory, I can go back to my home-
Loess is a fine-grained, chalky soil between silt and clay, actually a deposit of wind-blown sand. China's loess deposits are the most extensive in the world; they cover most of Shanxi and Shannxi provinces, and the better part of Gansu, and extend into Hebei and Henan as well. Because it holds moisture well, loess makes good farming ground when irrigated. Loess is buff to gray in color (the Chinese word for loess, huángtǔ, means literally, “yellow soil”) and it is loess that gives the Yellow River its distinctive yellowish appearance.
1. A: Công gònghè đạo chénglí hái zhēn yuǎn, shèyuánmen jìn chéng māi dōngxi yǒu diǎnr bú tài fāngbiàn ba?
B: Mǐn měi kànjiàn, yánzhuō gōnglù bānle hǎojīng xiǎo shàngdiàn, māi dōngxi hái suān fāngbiàn.

It's such a long way from the commune into town, isn't it kind of inconvenient for the commune members to go into town to shop?

Didn't you see, a lot of little stores have been set up along the highway. It's fairly convenient to shop there.

2. A: Tiěliùshāng fāshēng shénme wèn-tǐ le ma? Wěishénme zhèbān tǎokuài bǐ māncē hái mā?
B: Mǐn bié jīnghāng, wǒ yě měi xiǎngdào yǒu zheīge qǐng-kuāng, wǒ xiānzài jiǔ qù wēn wèngōngchu.

Has some problem come up on the railroad? Why is this express even slower than a slow train?

Don't get nervous. I didn't expect this either. I'll go try to find out about it right now.

3. A: Zài mǎng wǒ yě dǎi huīqù yí-tāng, gāng mǎnshēng de liǎng-yāng dōngxi, quán wǎng zài shàngdiàn le!
B: Háishì mǎfan dǎoyóu huīqù zhǎo yītāng ba! Mǐn bié qù le.

No matter how busy I am I have to go back there. I left both the things I just bought in the store!

It would be better to trouble the guide to go back and look for them. Don't you go.

4. A: Shíjiān tài jǐn, yǒu de dìfāng wǒ jìu bù qù le, bǐfāng shuō yóu èr yuán ba! Yīhòu zài qù cānguān ba!
B: Hǎo. Wǒmen xuǎn jīge yǎo-jīndé dìfāng cānguān hǎo le.

I'm too pressed for time, so there are some places I'm not going. The kindergarten, for example—I'll visit there another time.

All right. Let's choose a few important places to visit.

5. A: Chóng chǎnliàng shāng kàn, Chángjiāng yǐnán de nóngyè shēngchǎn qǐngkuàng zhēn bù cuò.
B: Chángjiāng yǐnán bù yòng shuǐ le, jù shì Chángjiāng yībèi shēngchǎn qǐngkuàng yě gān-shànglí la!

From the point of view of yield, the agricultural production situation south of the Yangtze River is really good.

For the area south of the Yangtze that goes without saying, but even north of the Yangtze the level of production is catching up!
6. A: Shǒuduō gāngtiě Gōngsī de gōng-
    ren dōu zài zhēige shìtàng
    chī fàn ma?

   Do all the workers in the Capital Iron
   and Steel Company eat in this dining
   hall?

   B: Óu, wǒmen gōngsī yǒu hǎo jīyàn
    zhìgōng, jīshēn, yǒu bù shǎo
    de dà shìtàng ne!

   Oh, our company has tens of thousands
   of staff and workers and their fam-
   ilies. There are lots of large
   dining halls!

7. A: Shàngcì wǒ cānguān qìché zhī-
    zào cháng de shíhou hǎoxiǎng
    zài nàr jiànguò ta, tā shì
    nàr de zhígōng ba?

   It seems to me I saw him someplace the
   time I visited the automobile plant.
   Isn't he a staff member or worker
   there?

   B: Nǐn gǎocuò le, tā shì wǒmen
    lǐxíngshède gōngzuò rényuán.

   You're mistaken. He's one of our
   Travel Service personnel.

8. A: Nǐmen chǎng yǐbàn yǐshàngde
    gōngyé sūshē dōu shì xǐn-de
    ma!

   At your factory, over half of your
   workers' living quarters are new!

   B: Nài jīnián, sūshē běi gōde
    luànqībāzāo, zhīhǎo gài
    xǐnle de.

   During those few years, the living
   quarters were wrecked up, we had no
   choice but to build new ones.

9. A: Lái! Bǎ zhèi jīge jiăozi dōu
    xiăomiè le!

   Come on. Polish off [literally,
   "exterminate"] these dumplings!

   B: "Xiăomiè" jiăozi? Wǒ dào méi
    tíngguò zhēige shūsīfār!

   "Polish off" dumplings? I've never
   heard that expression before!

10. A: Wǒ fāxiăn nǐmende gōngzuò
    jīnxiăng de bù cuò ma? Bù
    xūyào shìjiān le ba?

   I find that your work is proceeding
   very well. I don't suppose you need
   any more time.

   B: Yì shūde dào róngyì! Yì
    zhídào wǒmen yòngle dōushāo
    yèrú shìjiān!

   That's easy for you to say. You don't
   know how much of our time after
   hours we used!

11. A: Chǎng lǐngdào hàozhào quán-
    chǎng gōngyé zhēige yuè
    duō shēngchǎn sībāibù
    qǐché.

   The leadership of our factory made an
   appeal to the workers of the whole
   factory to produce four hundred more
   cars this month.

   B: Bù cuò a! Nà zhēige yuède
    chǎngliăn chàbùduō dēngyú
    shāngge yuède yībèi bān là!

   That's great! Then this month's
   output is about equal to one and
   a half times last month's!
Unit 7, Vocabulary List

àn  according to
-bèi  time, -fold
bèi  (passive marker)
-bù  (counter for automobiles, machines, etc.)

Chángjiāng  Yangtze River
dào  yet, on the contrary, nevertheless
dǎoyù  (tour) guide
dǐngyú  to equal, to be equal to

fāshēng  to happen, to occur
fāxiàn  to discover

gāngtiě  iron and steel
gānshǎng(lái)  to catch up
gāocuò  to do wrong; to be wrong (mistaken)
gōnglù  highway

háishí  it would be better to
hàozhào (hàozhăo)  to call, to appeal

jiāshū  family members, (family)
        dependents
jǐn  to be tight
jǐnxìng  to carry on, to conduct; to be
jǐnzhǎng  to be nervous, to be tense
jiūshì...yě...  even (if)...

kuài yào  will soon
qīngchǔ (-chu)  to be clear, to be distinct
rényuán  personnel, staff
shèyuán  commune member
shǐtáng  mess hall, dining room
sūshè  living quarters; dormitory
tiělù  railroad

xiăomiè  to eliminate, to abolish, to exterminate, to wipe out
xuăn  to choose

-yàng  kind (bound form)
yánzhē  along(side)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yèyǔ</td>
<td>spare time, after hours, amateur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī-</td>
<td>(used before direction words to mark direction with reference to a point)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐshàng</td>
<td>above, over (an amount)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐxiā</td>
<td>under (an amount)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīduéryuán</td>
<td>kindergarten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīgōng</td>
<td>staff and workers; worker or staff member</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīzǎo</td>
<td>to manufacture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīzàochāng</td>
<td>manufacturing plant, factory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Công gònghè dào chéngli hài zhēn yuán, shèyuàmen jìn chéng mài dòngxi yǒu dìânr bù tāi fāngbian ba? It's such a long way from the commune into town, isn't it kind of inconvenient for the commune members to go into town to shop?

   B: Mǐn méi kānjian, yánzhe gōnglù bànle hǎo; jīe xiǎo shàngdiàn, mài dòngxi hài suān fāngbian. Didn't you see, a lot of little stores have been set up along the highway. It's fairly convenient to shop there.

Notes on No. 1:

hái zhēn yuán: Hái, "still," in this sentence may go untranslated; it expresses surprise at how far it is into town. In this meaning, hái is often used before zhēn, "really."

Nǐ hái zhēn bù pá lǎng, zhème lǎngdè tiān chuān zhème shēng! You really don't mind ("aren't afraid of") the cold; you wear so little in such cold weather!

Shèyuán, "commune member," includes working members and their non-working family members. The ending -yuán is used in various compound words to mean "member":

Dângyuán Party member
Tuányuán (Communist Youth) League member
huíyuán OR chéngyuán member

yǒu dìânr bù tāi fǎngbian: "a little inconvenient, kind of inconvenient" You are familiar with the phrasing yǒu dìânr bù fāngbian. Here you see that use bù tāi instead of just bù.

Yánzhe, "along, alongside," is used for longer distances than pángbiān, "side."

Qīchē yánzhe zhéitiāo lù kāile hěn jīu cái kānjian yīge rén. The car drove along this road a long time before they saw a person.

Yánzhe fāngzì sībiânr zhǎngle hǎoduō huā. A lot of flowers were planted along the four sides of the house (i.e., all around the house).

BUT:

Fāngzì pángbiān zhǎngle hǎoduō huā. A lot of flowers were planted alongside the house (on the side or sides).

gōnglù: "public-road," i.e., "highway" Expressway is gāosù gōnglù, "high-speed public-road." (As of this writing, mainland China has no expressways; Taiwan has one, which goes from the north to the south of the island.)
hái suàn: "can still be considered to be..." This is an idiom for "fairly." Compare the use of hái for "fairly" which you learned in the Society module, for example, Hái hào, "Fairly good."

Tā hái suàn wèntí shǎode xué-shēng, bìdé rén wèntí gèng duō. He can be considered a student with relatively few problems; the others have even more problems.

Nà hái suàn xiǎo shì. That's no big thing ("a small matter").

2. A: Tiělùshāng fāshēng shénme wèntí le ma? Wéishénme zhéibān tèkuài bǐ mánchē hái màn? Has some problem come up on the railroad? Why is this express even slower than a slow train?

B: Nǐn bié jǐnzāng, wǒ yě měi xiāngdào yǒu zhèige qīng-kuàng, wǒ xǐzǎi jiù qū wēn wèng qǐng-chū. Don't get nervous. I didn't expect this either. I'll go try to find out about it right now.

Notes on No. 2

tiělù: "railroad," literally, "iron-road"

Xīběi de tiělù bù duō, ěrqǐ yǒu bù shǎo shì gāng xiū de. There aren't many railroads in the Northwest, and many of them were just built.

Wǒ yǒu yīge gēge zài tiělùshāng gōngzuò. I have an older brother who works on the railroad.

fāshēng: "to happen," "to occur" The event which happens often follows fāshēng in the sentence (just as in sentences with yǒu, "there is," the thing that exists often follows yǒu):

Bù zhídào fāshēngle shénme shì qǐng, láile zhème dùō rén. I wonder what has happened that so many people have come here.

Zhěi jiùtiān fāshēngle hǎo yǐjiàn qǐguàide shì. The last few days, a lot of strange things have been happening.

Nèi shíhou fāshēngde shì, wǒ dōu bù zěnme qīngchū le. The things that happened then aren't very clear in my mind anymore.

Shèi dōu bù jǐde zhěiyī jiàn shì shí shēnme shíhou fāshēngde le. No one remembers when that event took place anymore.

bǐ mánchē hái màn: "even slower than a slow train" Here, hái is used as "even."

Zuótiān lěng, jíntí: bǐ zuótiān hái lěng. It was cold yesterday, (but) today is even colder than yesterday.
TVL, Unit 7

"Jīnzhāng: "to be nervous," "to be tense"

Zài zhēlǐ kāi chē zhèn jīnzhāng, It's really nerve-racking to drive
bú zhīdào shèmè shíhòu hū run into someone.
zhùnghào rén.

wèn wènjīngchǔ, "to inquire until clear," i.e., "to try to find out the
true situation." Notice that you can reduplicate a verb (here, wèn) even
when the verb is followed by a resultative ending (here, qīngchú). Other
examples: Qīng nǐ bā shèng shuōshuōqīngchú. "Please explain this more
clearly"; Bā shuōzhī cāngān jīng, "Wipe the table clean."

3. A: Zài mǎng wǒ yě děi huǐqu yí-tāng, gāng mǎihào de liǎng-
yáng dōngxi, quán wànɡ zài shǎngdiànli le!

B: Hái shì mǐfān dāoyóu huǐqu zhāo yí-tāng ba! Mǐn bié qù le. It would be better to trouble the
guide to go back and look for them. Don't you go.

Notes on No. 3

zài mǎng...yě...: "no matter how busy..." The zài in this pattern
meaning literally, "more, additionally") must be given extra-heavy stress:
zài mǎng wǒ yě děi huǐqu. Yě here means "still, even so."

Zhōngwén zài nán wǒ yě yào xué. No matter how hard Chinese is, I'm
still going to study it.

-tāng: This counter for trips need not be translated here. Used with
verbs like jí, qù, huǐqu, huǐqu, etc., -tāng simply counts the number of
times someone goes someplace. Other examples:

Tā shàngqí dài Shānghǎi
qíle yí-tāng.

Wǒ jīntiān yījīng wǎnɡ tā nà pí hǒu liǎngtāng le.

-yāng: "kind, sort" You have learned the word -zhōng, "kind, sort,
type." These words are slightly different in usage; sometimes -yāng should
not be translated literally as "kind," but just left out of the translation
(see the third, fourth, and fifth examples).

Zhèi yāng dōngxi wǒ dōu méi
kànjiānguò, hěn qīguài.

Nǐ kǎndēchūlái zhèi liǎng-yāng
dōngxi yǒu shènme bù yǐyāng ma? Can you tell what's different about
these two kinds of things?

182
Wǒmen jīntiān wǎnshǎng yǒu jiānghǎi? How many dishes are we having tonight [for dinner]?

Tā dào shāngdiàn qùle jīcī yě méi mǎihui jiānghǎi dòngxi lăi. He went to the store several times, but didn't come back with a single thing.

Wǒ zhèr hǎi yǒu liāngyàng shuí-guō...yīge pǐngguō yīge júzi. I still have two fruits here...one apple and one tangerine/orange.

hǎishi: "it would be better to..." This is another meaning for the word which you first learned as meaning "still."

Wǒ bù shūfu, hǎishi shǎo chī diănr ba. I'm not feeling well. I'd better not eat too much.

Hǎishi āúyǎng lăoshī yīge rēn qū, nǐmen dōu liă zài zhèr ba. It would be better if Teacher āúyǎng went alone; the rest of you just stay here.

Also used in the pattern hǎishi...hǎo:

Hǎishi nǐ qù hǎo. It would be better if you went.

4. A: shíjiān tài jīn, yòude difang wǒ jiù bù qù le, bǐfang shuō yǒuxīyúăn ba! Yīshou zài qù cānguān ba! I'm too pressed for time, so there are some places I'm not going. The kindergarten, for example--I'll visit there another time.

B: Hǎo. Wǒmen xuăn jīge yāo-jīndé difang cānguān hǎo le. All right. Let's choose a few important places to visit.

Notes on No. 4

jīn: "to be tight," in both literal and figurative senses.

Zhèishuāng xiē tài jīn. These shoes are too tight.

Bā mén guānjīn. Shut the door tight.

Wǒde shíjiān ānpaide hěn jīn. I have a very tight schedule.

bǐfang shuō...ba: Ba can be used at the end of a bǐfang shuō phrase. Compare the use of ba shown in unit 5.

yǒuxīyúăn: "kindergarten," literally, "young-child-garden" In Taiwan, the word yǒuzhǐyúăn is used instead.
xuǎn: "to choose," "to select"; "to elect"

Tāmen xuǎn wǒ wǔ duō dǎi bǐ sē de shí-
hou, wǒ hěn bù hǎo yīsī.

She walked around the store for a
long time but didn't find anything
she liked. (Xuǎn is often used
for "selecting"—buying—items at
a store.)

Tā zài shāng diān lǐ zǒu le bǎn tiān
yě méi xuǎn dào tā xǐ huānde
dōng xi.

When they elected me as representative,
I was very embarrassed.

5. A: Cóng chǎn liàng shāng kān,
Chāngjiāng yǐn nán de nón yè
shēng chān qǐng kuàng zhēn bù
cù é.

From the point of view of yield, the
agricultural production situation
south of the Yangtze River is really
good.

B: Chāngjiāng yǐn nán bù yòng shū
le, jìu shì Chāng jiāng yǐ běi
shēng chān qǐng kuàng yě gān-
shāng lăi là!

For the area south of the Yangtze that
goes without saying, but even north
of the Yangtze the level of produc-
tion is catching up!

Notes on No. 5

cóng chǎn liàng shāng kān: "from the point of view of yield" Other
examples of this pattern: cóng shū liàng shāng kān, "from the point of view
of numbers/quantity"; cóng fā zhān jīng jí shāng kān, "from the point of view
of developing the economy."

Chāngjiāng: "Long-River," the Yangtze, now called the Changjiang in
P.R.C. publications. China's longest river (6,300 kilometers), the Changjiang
is an important artery of water transportation, passing through the cities of
Chóng qīng, Wū hān, Nǎn jīng, and Shān gāi.

(...Yǐnán: "to the south of..."

Jú zì zhōng zài Chāng jiāng yǐn nán
shì tiān de, dào lè Chāng jiāng
yǐ běi jìu chéng le kū de le.

Tangerines grown south of the Chang-
jiang are sweet, but north of the
Changjiang, they become bitter.

jìu shì... yě...: (1) "even..."; (2) "even if...

(1) Jìu shì wǒ yě zhī dào.

Even I know that.

Jìu shì xué zhě yě bù dōng zhě ge
wèntí.

Even scholars do not understand
this problem.

Zhè ge dā píng guǒ shì wǒ tè bié
xuǎn chū lăi gěi nǐ de.

I picked this big apple out especially
for you.

*dǎ bǐ sē, "representative, delegate" (TVL, Unit 8)
(2) Tā shuō jìushi nǐ qū zuò yě zūububđo. He said that even if you did it, you wouldn't do it right.

Nǐ jìushi mǎile wǒ yě bù chī. Even if you bought it I wouldn't eat it.

Bù yòng shuō X, jiù shì Y yě... This three-part pattern means "For X, that goes without saying, but even Y is...." Sometimes in English we mention the parts X and Y in the reverse order: "Even Y is ..., not to mention X."

Nèige dìfang zhēn hǎowānr, bù yòng shūō xiāohǎir, jiù shì dàrèn yě zāi nèr wǎnrde hěn gāoxīng. That place is really fun. Even grown-ups have a great time there, not to mention children.

For bù yòng shuō, you can often substitute bù yào shuō. For jiù shì, you can substitute lián. For yě, you can substitute dōu.

When the clause after yě has bù or méi, you can translate bù yòng shuō as "much less":

Bù yòng shuō zhōngxuěshēng, jiù shì yānjiūshēng yě kānbūděng zhěiplān wēnzhāng. Even graduate students cannot understand this article, much less high school students.

Wǒ bù yòng shuō xiě, lián tīng yě lāibujī. I couldn't even keep up listening to it, much less write it down.

Bù yào shuō qù kàn diànyīng, wǒ lián chī fǎnde shǐjiān dōu méiyǒu. I don't even have time to eat, much less go to the movies.

gǎnshanglái: "to catch up" by hurrying (gǎn means "to hurry")

Tā suīrán bīngtāi hǎojītān, kěshí xuéxī hǎishì gǎnshanglái le. Although he has been sick for quite a few days, he has caught up with his schoolwork.

Wǒ yǒu dīxī shǐ, xīmen xiān zǒu ba! Dēng yīhuì wǒ jīu gǎnshanglái. I have something I have to do. You go on ahead. I'll catch up with you in a minute.

6. A: Shǒudū Gǎngtīē gōngshí gōng- ren dōu zāi zhēige shítáng chī fǎn me? Do all the workers in the Capital Iron and Steel Company eat in this dining hall?

B: Ōu, wǒmén gōngshí yǒu hǎojīyīwān zhīgōng, jiěshì, yǒu bù shāo de dà shítáng ne! Oh, our company has tens of thousands of staff and workers and their families. There are lots of large dining halls!
Notes on No. 6

gāngăi: Literally, "steel-iron," but usually translated as "iron and steel" (The usual order of paired words in Chinese and English is often the same, but sometimes differs. Other examples are bāba māma, "mom and dad"; yèyé nǎinai, "grandma and grandpa.")

shǐtăng: "dining hall," "cafeteria," "mess hall"

zhīgōng: "staff and workers"; "staff member or worker"

Zhèige chăngde zhīgōng dǎbōfen shì nüde.

This staff and worker school has a lot of good teachers who are very interested and enthusiastic toward staff and worker education.

Zhīgōng shǐtāng chângchâng mài lâng fânr.

Staff and worker dining halls often sell cold food.

jiāshū: "family members," "(family) dependents"

Gàn bude jiāshū chângchâng shōudào tèbiěde zhâogu.

The families of cadres often receive special care.

Dàqíngde gōngrén jiāshū hěn duō dōu shì nângmín.

Many families of workers at Dàqíng are peasants.

NOTE: Although in context jiāshū may be translated as "family," as in the sentence above, it is different from jiātīng. Jiātīng refers to the family unit, the household. Jiāshū refers collectively to the family members other than the head of household.

yǒu bù shāode dâshítâng ne!: On this use of ne, see Unit 3 Reference Notes, Notes on No. 5.

7. A: Shângqí wǒ cānguān qîchê zhīzhâochâng de shînâo hâoxiâng tài nàr jiângguó ta, tâ shì nârde zhîgōng ba?

It seems to me I saw him someplace the time I visited the automobile plant. Isn't he a staff member or worker there?

B: Nǐn găocuō le, tâ shí wōmen Lúfângshède gōngzuō rényuân.

You're mistaken. He's one of our Travel Service personnel.

Notes on No. 7

zhîzhào: "to manufacture," as in Zhîngguó zhîzhào, "Made in China."

zhîzhîochâng, "plant," "factory"
rèn tài bù zhèngquè: "have seen him somewhere"  nèr, like other question words used in statements, becomes an indefinite pronoun here: "somewhere."

Wǒ jīde wǒ zài nèr chīguō zhēige cài.  I remember having this dish "somewhere" before.

gāocuò: "to get (something) wrong" or "to do (something) wrong"

Bié gāocuò le, zhēige zì hěn fūzā ne!  Don't get it wrong; this character is very complicated!

ò, wǒ gāocuò le, tā bù shì wǒ yào zhǎode nèige náhāizì.  Oh, I'm mistaken. She isn't the young woman I'm looking for.

Tā běi zhēige wèntì gāocuò le, méiyōu nàme fūzā.  He has misunderstood this problem. It's not that complicated.

Compare other verbs that have the resultative ending ending -cuò:

Měi niàncuò le bá, zhēige zī hǎoxiàng bù niànlǜ, niànlǜe.  You've read it wrong, haven't you? I don't think this character is read lǜe; it's read lǜ.

Xiǎoxīn, bù yào zōucuò.  Careful, don't go the wrong way.

rényuán: "personnel," "staff"  Often used in gōngzuò rényuán, "working personnel," "staff member."

Zhèlǐ suǒyǒude gōngzuò rényuán dōu shǎngguò dàxué.  All the personnel here have attended college.

Wǒmen xiànzài xūyào hěn duō dōng Yingyǔde kějī rényuán.  We now need a lot of scientific and technical personnel who understand English.

8. A:  Nǐmen chǎng yībānr yíshǎngde gōngren sūshè dōu shì xīnde ma!  At your factory, over half of your workers' living quarters are new!

B:  Nèi jīn nián, sūshè běi gǎode luǎngfābăozào, zhī hǎo gāi xīnde le.  During those few years, the living quarters were wrecked up, we had no choice but to build new ones.

Notes on No. 8:

yībānr yíshǎng: "over half"  Yíshǎng and yíxià are used after quantities to mean, respectively, "over" and "under" an amount.

Zhèrde yānjiūshēng, sānshísusī yíxià de bù tài duō.  Not many of the graduate students here are under thirty.
Zài Běijīng, wūcèng lóu yīshǎng-de cālǒu cài yǒu diàntī. In Běijīng, only buildings over five stories high have elevators.

Běifēn zhī bāshíwǔ yīshǎngde Zhōngguó rén kǒu shì nónghān. Over eighty-five percent of the population of China is made up of peasants.

sūshè: "living quarters", "dormitory" This can either refer to the kind of quarters we think of as dormitories, with many people living and sleeping in each large room, or it can mean housing provided by an institution for its workers, with each family living in separate quarters.

Zhèi diānguān shì gāngtiēchàngde gōngrén sūshè. This place is the workers' quarters of the iron and steel plant.

Wàijīshìbūde sūshè bǐ biéde būde sūshè dōu piāoliāng. The Foreign Ministry living quarters are better-looking than those of any other ministry.

nèi jīnián: "those few years" This is currently a way of referring to the period of the Cultural Revolution.

bèi: This is a prepositional verb which indicates the DOER of the action, similar to the English "by" in passive sentences (like "John was hit by Bill"). In sentences with bèi, the subject of the sentence is the receiver of the action and the object of bèi is the doer of the action:

Wǒde zìdiǎn bèi rén jíshǒu le. My dictionary was borrowed by someone.

Nèi jīnián, zhēnggè shèhù bèi jīge rén gāo de lùnqībāzāo, zhēnhái bānfā shūshū. Those few years, the whole society was messed up by a few people; it is really sad.

Unlike most prepositional verbs, bèi can be used without an object, as in sentence 8B. Here is another example:

Wǒde xīn qìchē bèi zhūāng le. My new car was hit.

9. A: Lái! Bā zhèi jíge jīmòzì dōu xiāomài le! Come on. Polish off [literally, "exterminate"] these dumplings!

B: "Xiāomài" jīmòzì? Wǒ dào měi tīngguō zhègè shūōfār! "Polish off" dumplings? I've never heard that expression before!

Notes on No. 9

Lái!: Notice that lái does not necessarily mean "come here," but can also mean "come on" and do some action.

Lái, zànmen gān yībēi! Come on, let's empty a glass together!
Lái ba, wǒmen shàng kè ba, bù shuō bìde le.
Come on, let's get on with class and stop talking about other things.

Lái lái lái, wǒ lái gěi nǐmen jiēshào wǒ gěn nǐmen shuōguode
Now everyone, let me introduce Professor Liáng, whom I've told
Liáng Jiăoshòu.
you about before.

xiāomiè: "to exterminate/eliminate/wipe out/stamp out" bad things such
as landlords, the enemy, illness, poverty, illiteracy, rats, flies, etc. In
sentence 9, it is used humorously.

bā...xiāomiè le!: You long ago learned le, the marker of completion.
Here, le indicates that the action of the verb gets rid of something in one
fell swoop. Here are other examples for comparison:

Bā zhège zhǔchì mái le ba, Sell this table. It's of no use
měi yōng le.
amore.

Bā diànhì guānle, wǒ bù
Turn off the T.V. I don't want to
kàn le.
watch any more.

Bā yīfu tuōle ba, zhèr tài rè.
Take off your coat; it's too hot
here.

This use of le is especially frequent with the adverb dòu, "all":

Dòu mái le ba!
Why not buy all of them!

Dòu hēle ba!
Drink the whole thing!

dào: "yet, nevertheless, on the contrary" This is a very common adverb
with one basic idea to it—the idea of contrasting one element with another.
Depending on the context, the translation into English will differ. Here are
examples of the main contexts in which you will encounter dào:

(1) One particular element in the sentence is contrasted with something
previously mentioned, about to be mentioned, or understood. (The
contrasted elements are underlined in the following examples.)

A: NY xiāng hē diǎn shénme?  What would you like to drink?
B: Wǒ bù xiāng hē shénme, wǒ  I don't feel like having anything
dào xiāng chǐ diǎn shénme.  to drink. I would like something
to eat, though.

Xià yǔde shìhou nǐ bū dài sànr, On rainy days you don't take an
jítiān bù xià yǔ nǐ dào dài umbrella with you, but today, when
sànr!  it isn't raining, you do take one

(2) The whole situation expressed by the sentence contrasts with another
particular set of circumstances previously mentioned, about to be
mentioned, or understood.

Bānshāng zúi hǎode xuèshēng zhèi- The best student in the class did the
cì dào kǎode zúi bù hǎo. worst on the exam this time.
A: Jinnian dăngtian zên lăng!  
B: Shēng bìngde rèn dào shǎo le.  

It's really cold this winter!  
Fewer people have been getting sick, though.

A: Zhè fángzì nàmé xiǎo, yǒu nàmé guì.  
B: Kěshì nǐ shàng bān duō făng-bìan!  
A: Nà dào shì.  

This house/apartment is so small, and so expensive.  
But it's so convenient for you to go to work.  
Well, that's true.

Wǒ dào shì xiǎng bāng zhǎng, jiù shì méi shǐjiān.  

I did want to help, it's just that I didn't have the time.

Shǐqǐng dào shì guōqu le, hěn chǎng shǐjiān yě wǎngbùlíkō.  

It was over with, but we couldn't forget about it for a long time.

Nà dào méi guānxī, zhǐ yào tā bù jièyì jiù suàn le.  

That doesn't matter. As long as he doesn't mind, then let it go at that.

(3) The whole sentence contrasts with expectations. In these cases, dào sometimes implies satisfaction with the state of affairs, sometimes dissatisfaction, and sometimes is neutral. In addition, it sometimes has an ironic meaning, as in the last three examples below.

Yǒu zhēiyáng de shì! Wǒ dào bù zhídào!  

Is that so! Why, I didn't know!

Aiyā! Wǒ dào bù zhějiān shì wàng le!  

Oh no! I forgot about that!

Sānshíliùwàn? Nà dào bù guì.  

Thirty dollars? That's not so expensive. (Dào implies "I would have expected it to be more.")

Rúguǒ zhēn shì zhēiyàng, dào hái yǒu xīwàng.  

If that's really true, then there's still hope after all.

Hǎig, nǐ dào zhēn jǐng chǐ a!  

Well! Quite the gourmet aren't you! (Jǐng—to be meticulous about)

Hǎng! Nǐ dào shūdà hǎọtīng! Nǐ zuòzuò kan.  

Hmph! You make it sound easy! Let's see you do it!

Tā shuō wǒ bù gài zhěme zuò, wǒ dào xiǎng zhídào tā shì wǒ zěnme ruò!  

He says I shouldn't have done this, but I'd like to know what he would have done if he were me!
10. A: Wǒ fāxiàn nǐmènde gōngzuò jùxìnghde bù cuò ma? Bù xūyào shìjiān le ba?

B: Wǒ shuōde dào róngyi! Wǒ zhídào wǒmen yòngle duòshǎo yèyǔ shìjiān!

I find that your work is proceeding very well. I don't suppose you need any more time.

That's easy for you to say. You don't know how much of our time after hours we used!

Notes on No. 10

fāxiàn: "to discover," "to find out"; "discovery"

Wǒ dāole yǒu jǐ cái fāxiàn wàng dài xīn le.

I didn't discover I had forgotten to bring the letters with me until I was at the post office.

Hěn duō yǐxué dà fāxiàn dōu fāshèng zài gōngyè gēmíng yǐhòu.

Many great medical discoveries were made after the industrial revolution.

The phrase Wǒ fāxiàn . . . is often used to preface an observation made about a person, or a fact that has just come to one's attention:

Wǒ fāxiàn nǐ hěn nèng chī!

I see you have quite a big appetite!

jǐnxīng: "to carry on," "to conduct," "to proceed"

Zhēlì de tǎolùn jǐnxīngde bù cuò, wèntí kuài shānglianghào le.

The discussion here is proceeding well; the problem has almost been resolved.

yèyǔ: "spare-time," "after hours," "amateur" NOTE: "Spare time" as a noun must be translated as yèyǔ shìjiān.

Yèyǔ shìjiān wǒ xǐhuān kàn xiǎoshíuō.

I like to read fiction in my spare time.

Tā shì yèyǔ yǔyánxuéjī.

He is an amateur linguist.


B: Bù cuò a! Nà zhèige yuède chǎnliàng chábudú dēngyù shāngge yuède yībèi bàn la!

The leadership of our factory made an appeal to the workers of the whole factory to produce four hundred more cars this month.

That's great! Then this month's output is about equal to one and a half times last month's!

Notes on No. 11

Hàozhào or hàozhèc means to issue an official appeal to engage in some activity:
Zhēngguó hàozhào niánqǐng rén nǚfù xuēxi kěxué zhūshì. The government calls on young people to work hard to acquire scientific knowledge.

Yínggài hàozhào dàjiā xiǎng tā xuēxi. We should call on everyone to learn from her.

Chūntiān lái le, yǒu hàozhào zhōng shù le. Spring is here; they're issuing calls to plant trees again.

Lǐngdǎo hàozhào zōng shi yī kāishǐ hěn duō rén tíng, hòulái jiù méi rén zhǔyǐ le. Appeals from the leaders are always followed by many people in the beginning, then later people stop paying attention to them.

-běi: This is an extremely common and useful counter. It is used for cars, buses, machines, movies, and long books.

Zhěi shí yìfù jiǎng huàxué zhǎnzhēngde diànyīng. This is a movie about chemical warfare.

děngyǔ: "to be equal to"

Èr jiā èr děngyǔ shì. Two plus two equals four.

Děngyǔ is more often used in a non-mathematical sense:

Tā zhèiyàng zúō, děngyǔ bǎ yī zuòde quán dōu gǎi le. By doing this, he is in effect changing everything you have done. (Literally, "For him to do this is equal to changing all you have done.")

-běi: "times," "-fold," as in

sānběi three times/threefold
shīběi ten times/tenfold
yībānběi one hundred times/hundredfold

Amounts with -běi can be used in two different patterns, and the type of pattern used influences the meaning, as follows:

EQUIVALENCE PATTERN (A = x times y)

---expresses equivalence between two amounts
---uses the verb shì, yǒu, or děngyǔ

Examples: Liù shí èrde sānběi. Six is three times two.

Tāde shū yǒu wǒde sīběi. He has four times as many books as I.

Jīnnián de shòurù děngyǔ qúnliǎn de liǎngběi. This year's income is twice last year's.
COMPARISON PATTERN (A is x times more than y)

--expresses comparison between two amounts
---uses bī, "compared to," "than"
---the number before bī must be translated into English as one more than the Chinese number

EXAMPLES:  

Liù bī èr duō liāngbèi.  Six is three times as much as two.

Tāde shū bī wǒde duō sānbèi.  He has four times as many books as I.

Jīn nián de shānshān bī qùnián duō yībèi.  This year's income is twice last year's.

As you see, if you use liāngbèi, "two times," in a comparison sentence, the meaning comes out to "the base amount plus two times the base amount," i.e., three times the base amount. Likewise, if you use yībèi, "one time," the meaning is "the base amount plus one time the base amount," or in other words, twice the base amount.
Unit 7, Review Dialogue

This conversation takes place on one of the China Travel Service tour buses. The bus is on its way to the Capital Iron and Steel Company in Liao Ning province. Jane Colihan (A), an American economist, talks with Ling Li (B) of the China Travel Service.

B: Kālǐhèn Nǔshì, nǐn báishí gānhuí-lai le!
Ms. Colihan, you made it back after all!

A: Shíjiān tài jǐn, wǒ yě děi gān-huí-lai cānguān Shòudū Gāngtiĕ gōng-sī a!
No matter how pressed I was for time, I had to get back in time to visit the Capital Iron and Steel Company!

B: Wǒ xiǎng, nǐmen zhècì dào Dōng-běi cānguān, yào qù duǒ fēng fāng nǎi duō, shǐjiān yìdīng hěn jǐnzhāng, dāigāi zhèi liángtiān hǎi huíbūlái. Měi xiǎngdào, ānpai de hǎi bù cuò.
I thought there were so many places you wanted to go on this trip to Manchuria that you would be very rushed and wouldn't be able to get back by today or tomorrow. I'm surprised it was so well arranged.

A: Ng, Dōngběi fāngmòi gāode hěn hǎo, wǒmen cānguān de diǎng jiāo-tōng dōu hěn fāngbiàn. Yānzhe tiělù, gōnglû, yǐzhān yǐzhān cāngguānguōqù, zhèmè duō rén de cāngguāntuān, shēnme wēn fēi dōu méiyǒu fāshèng, dājiā dùó hěn mǎnyǐ, zhēn shì gāode bù cuò.
Yeah. The people in Manchuria did quite a good job. Every place we visited, transportation was convenient. Visiting each stop along the railroad and highway, with a tour group of that size, no problems came up, and everyone was very pleased. It was really well handled.

B: Nǐn tài kěqí le.
It's so nice of you to say that.

A: Bú shì kěqí, zhè shì zhēndé. Duì le, zhècì lùxíng, wǒ hǎi fā-xiānle yǐjiān hěn yǒu yìsīde shìr.
I'm not just saying it, it's the truth! Oh yes, I found out something very interesting during the trip.

B: Shéme shìr a?
What?

A: Fēi wǒmen cānguān de yǐwéi nǚ gōng-zuò rǎnyuán, cāngqián zāi yǐge rěn-mín gōngshè zuò shèyuán, hūlái hǎi zāi yǐge gōngchāng zuò gōngcèn, liǎngnián yǐqián kǎishǐ zāi Lùxíng-shè gōngzuò, tā zhēn shì yǐwéi hǎo dǎoyòu.
A woman on the staff that accompanied us on the trip used to be a commune member, then became a worker in a factory, and then started to work in the (China) Travel Service two years ago. She's really a great guide.

B: Tā shì bu shì Hēılǒngjiāng rén?
Is she a native of Heilongjiang?
A: Bù shì, tā bù shì Hēilóngjiāng rèn, kěshì tā duì nàrde qíngkuàng hài zhèn shùxì. Lǐshì, wénhuà, gōngyè, nóngyè, shènmé tā dōu zhīdào. Tīng tā tánqǐlái zhèn yǒu yǐsì.

A: Duì le, duì le. Nǐ zhè yī shūō wǒ dào xiāngqǐlái le, yǒu yītiān wò men zuòde nǐlǜ qíchē huáile, dàjiā dōu hên dānxīn, wò men xiǎng wò men yídīng gānbushāng cānguān le. Kěshì nǐwèi xiānjīn gōngzuòzhě hé jīgè rèn zài qíchē xiàbān mǎngle yīhuìr, bù dào shīfèn zhōng ba, chē jìu xiūhào le!

B: Suǒyǐ nàtiān nǐmen hǎishì ān yóulán jīhuā, yào qù dīfang dōu qù le?

A: Shì a. Wǒ yǒu shihou jǐ xiāng, zhèhuì jīn Xiǎoméi zhèn shì xiāngdāng cōngmíngdè rèn, tā zěnme bù qù shǎng dàxué ne? Shì bù shì wēnhuà Dà Gēmíngdē shìhòu yǒu shènmé shǐqìng gāncuò le?

B: Ó, méi shēnmé shīqìng. Xiānzāi bù guān zài nàr gōngzuò dōu yǒu hěn duō jīhuí niǎn shū.

A: Ó, shì ma?

B: Shì a, bǐfāng shuō, wòmen jīntiān yào cānguānzhè zéjīng gāngtī cōngfā ba, lǐngdào hàozhāo zhīgōng zài yèyǔ shījīǎn xùéxí jīshū.

A: Yǒu hěn duō rèn cānjiā ma?


A: Yě, wǒ yào jīnshí de jīhuā, dū shì shì tā fālái tā yì. Lǐshì, wénhuà, gōngyè, nóngyè, shènmé tā dōu zhīdào. Tīng tā tánqǐlái zhèn yǒu yǐsì.

B: Wǒ zhīdào tā shì shèi le, tā cōngqíān shì qīchē zhīzhào chāngde gōngrèn, xiānzāi shì Lǔxīngshède xiānjīn gōngzuòzhě. Tā jiào Jīn Xiǎoméi.

A: Duì le, duì le. Nǐ zhè yī shūō wǒ dào xiāngqǐlái le, yǒu yītiān wò men zuòde nǐlǜ qíchē huáile, dàjiā dōu hên dānxīn, wò men xiǎng wò men yídīng gānbushāng cāngguān le. Kěshì nǐwèi xiānjīn gōngzuòzhě hé jīgè rèn zài qíchē xiàbān mǎngle yīhuìr, bù dào shīfèn zhōng ba, chē jìu xiūhào le!

A: Duì le, duì le. Nǐ zhè yī shūō wǒ dào xiāngqǐlái le, yǒu yītiān wò men zuòde nǐlǜ qíchē huáile, dàjiā dōu hên dānxīn, wò men xiǎng wò men yídīng gānbushāng cāngguān le. Kěshì nǐwèi xiānjīn gōngzuòzhě hé jīgè rèn zài qíchē xiàbān mǎngle yīhuìr, bù dào shīfèn zhōng ba, chē jìu xiūhào le!

B: Suǒyǐ nàtiān nǐmen hǎishì ān yóulán jīhuā, yào qù dīfang dōu qù le?

A: Shì a. Wǒ yǒu shihou jǐ xiāng, zhèhuì jīn Xiǎoméi zhèn shì xiāngdāng cōngmíngdè rèn, tā zěnme bù qù shǎng dàxué ne? Shì bù shì wēnhuà Dà Gēmíngdē shìhòu yǒu shènmé shǐqìng gāncuò le?

B: Ó, méi shēnmé shīqìng. Xiānzāi bù guān zài nàr gōngzuò dōu yǒu hěn duō jīhuí niǎn shū.

A: Ó, shì ma?

B: Shì a, bǐfāng shuō, wòmen jīntiān yào cānguānzhè zéjīng gāngtī cōngfā ba, lǐngdào hàozhāo zhīgōng zài yèyǔ shījīǎn xùéxí jīshū.

A: Yǒu hěn duō rèn cānjiā ma?


No, she's not a native of Hēilóngjiāng, but she really knows the place well. History, culture, industry, agriculture, you name it. She's very interesting to listen to.

I know who she is. She used to be a worker in an automobile manufacturing plant, and now she's one of the Travel Service's advanced workers. Her name is Jīn Xiǎoméi.

Right, right. That reminds me, one day our bus broke down, and everyone was very worried. We didn't think we could possibly make it in time for our tour. But that advanced worker worked under the bus for a while with some other people, and in less than ten minutes the bus was fixed!

So that day, you still made it to all the places you were supposed to go, according to your tour schedule?

Yes. Sometimes I think to myself, this Jīn Xiǎoméi is really quite a smart person, why doesn't she go to college? Did she do something wrong during the Cultural Revolution?

Oh, no. Now, no matter where you work, you have a lot of opportunities to study.

Oh, really?

Sure. For example, the iron and steel company that we're going to visit today: the leaders appeal to the workers and staff to study technology in their spare time.

Are there a lot of people taking part?

Yes. The number of staff and workers taking [lit., "selecting"] classes at evening universities this year
A: Qíngkuāng hěn hǎo a! Nàme Wènhuà Dà Gānmíngde shìhou ne? YNC
zǎiyòu yēdānxué a?

B: Nèi shìhou, zhènggèr guǒjì à dòu
bèi gào de luánqǐbāzǎo le, hǎi yǒu
shénme yēdānxué a!

A: Xiǎnzài hǎo le.

B: Xiǎnzài hǎoduō le, gǒngsī yǒu
shìtáng, yǒu yǒuyuán, niánqīng
gōngrén bù yǒng shuō le, jiù shì
yǒu hǎizǐde zhígōng yě yōu tiǎo-
jiān shāng dànxué le!

A: Zěnme, gǒngsīde zhígōng dòu zhū
zài gǒngsī sūshèlǐ ma?

B: Shòudū Gāngtǐ Gōngsī bǐ yīge
xiǎo chéng hǎi dà, bāifèn zhī qǐ-
bāshí yǐshāngde zhígōng hē jǐshū
dòu zhù zài gǒngsīde sūshèlǐ,
shāng, xià bān fāngbiān, shēnghuó
fāngbiān.

A: Nà hǎo, nà zhēn kěyì yǒu shíjiān
niān yīdiǎnr shū le.

B: Suǒyǐ gānmíngde, nǚ xuéxué
iánqīngrén yǐdīng yǒu bānfǎ niān
shūde.

A: Duì. Ng, wǒ hài yǒu yīge wèntí.

B: Shénme wèntí?

A: Wǒ hǎoxiǎng zài băoshāng hǎishí
zài nàr kǎnjǐnguō yǐpiān wēnzhāng,
shuō Chǎngjiāng fǔjīn, ò, Chǎng-
jiāng yǐnán yě yǒu yīge xiǎnghuā-
tūde gāngtǐ gōngsī, bǐ Shòudū
Gāngtǐ Gōngsī hǎi dà.

B: Shì a.

A: Chǎngjiāng yǐnán shì zhōngyàode

is equal to two or three times the
number before the Cultural Revolution.

That's good! And what about during
the Cultural Revolution? Were there
evening universities then?

Back then, the whole country was
messed up. Evening universities?
Hardly!

Now it's better.

Much better. The company has dining
halls and kindergartens. Not only
young workers, even staff and workers
with children are able to take (evening)
university courses.

What? The staff and workers of
the company all live in company housing?

The Capital Iron and Steel Company
is even bigger than a town. More than
seventy or eighty percent of the staff
and workers and their families live in
company housing. It makes it more
convenient to go to work and to get
home from work, and makes daily life
more convenient.

That's good. Then they really have
time to study.

So the smart young people who work
hard are assured of the chance to
go to school.

Right. Uh, I have another question.

What?

I remember seeing an article, I think
in the newspaper or somewhere, that
said that in the Yangtze River area,
no, to the south of the Yangtze, there
is another modern iron and steel com-
pany that's even larger than the
Capital Iron and Steel Company.

Right.

The area to the south of the Yangtze
nóngyègū, còng fāzhǎn jīngjiānháng kān, hǎoxiǎng yǒu yìdiǎnr bù tài hěshì.

B: Duì, gōngyè wūrān duì nóngyè fā-
zhǎn méiyǒu hǎochu, wōmén zài xiǎng bānshāi. Shǒudū gāngtiě gōng-
sī yě yǒu wūrānde wéntì, nǐ zhīdào, zhōng gōngyè duì shǒudū lái shuō kē bù tài hěshì.

A: Nàmé nǐde yìsì shì, Běijīng bù zhūnbèi tài fāzhǎn zhōng gōngyè le.

B: Duì, zhèi yǐdiǎn, zhèngguǐde jué-
dìng, shì hěn qǐngchude, wōmén děi bā Běijīng jiānshèchéng yīge yǒu wénhuà, shēnghuó fāngtīan, jīngji 
rāda, yǒu fēicháng gǎnjīngde chéngshì.

A: Hǎo, wǒ xiǎng wǒ xiānzāi bǐjiāo qǐngchū le.

B: Ėi, Kiāihàn Nǔshǐ, wǒ zhèr hǎi yǒu liǎngyàng shuíguǒ, wōmén bǎ ta xiāomiè le ba!

A: "Xiāomiè" le? Hǎo, hǎo. Wǒ dào shì diyīchǐ tíngjiān zhēige shuōfā.

B: Kuài yào dào le, shuíguǒ bū qīng ne, cānguǎndé shìhou náhe ta duó lèi ya, hǎishì xiānzāi bǎ ta chīle hǎo.

A: Hǎo, nà jiù xièxiè le.

is an important agricultural area, from the point of view of economic development it doesn't seem to be too appropriate.

Right. Industrial pollution isn't good for agricultural development. We're working on it. The Capital Iron and Steel Company also has a pollution problem. Heavy industry isn't very appropriate for a capital city, you know.

Then you mean that Běijīng isn't planning to develop their heavy industry any further?

Right. On this point, the government's decision is very clear. We should build Běijīng into a cultural city, convenient to live in, economically developed—and very clean.

Okay, I think I understand better now.

Oh, Ms. Colihan, I still have a couple of fruits here, let's polish them off!

"Polish them off?" Ohhh. That's the first time I've ever heard that expression.

We're almost there. The fruit is kind of heavy. It would be a bother to carry it around while we tour. It would be better to eat it now.

All right, then thank you.
Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American visiting the Běijīng Wristwatch Factory talks with the responsible person of the workers' family living quarters.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

- dōng  (counter for buildings)
- yèdàxué  evening university
- mén  (counter for school courses)
- yàobùrán  otherwise

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the factory's family housing like?

2. What problem do the staff, workers, and technical personnel who live in the cities have?

3. What activity may workers participate in? How many workers do this?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.
Exercise 3

In this conversation, an American tourist visiting a train engine factory in the north of China stops in at the kitchen of the factory's dining hall and talks with the chef.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

dā shīfu  
chéng  
lìngwài  
dōngbù  
Wúxi  
Jiāngmán  
bù shì tián dé jiù shì làde  
nóngchāng  
yūchǎng

chef  
to taste  
other  
the eastern part of a country  
(city in Jiāngsū province)  
the area south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze River  
if it isn't sweet, then it's hot  
farm  
fishery

Questions for Exercise 3

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. Was the chef expecting a visitor? How can you tell?
2. Where is the chef from? (Give both the city and where it is situated.)
3. What kinds of food do people from that area like?
4. Where does the chef get his vegetables?
5. What happened to the factory's food supply during the Cultural Revolution? What appeal did the factory's leadership make in 1977, and what was the result?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.
Exercise 1

In this exercise, you will hear a conversation between an American student and a young man in Běijīng.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

zhāi huār  to pick flowers
Huangzhuāng  (name of a commune)
zōng shōurù  total income
fānzhèng  anyway
tuí  to push
wàihuì  foreign exchange
gāozhōng  senior high school
-duǒ  (counter for flowers)

Questions for Exercise 1

1. Where does the young man live?

2. How is his production brigade doing? How does he know about these things?

3. What does his father like to do?

4. What are the young man's plans for the future?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

An American visiting the Beijing Wristwatch Factory talks with the responsible person of the workers' family living quarters.

A: Nínmen chăngde jiāshū sūshè dōu hén gānjìng, yē dōu hén xīn ma!

B: Wōmen chăngde sūshè hái suān bù cuō, chăng lǐngdào shuō hái yào zài gāi jīdōng xīn sūshè ne!

A: Sūshè hái bù gōu ma?

B: Bù gōu, wōmen chăng lǐ chéngli zhèn yuǎn, zhū zai chénglìde zhīgōng shàng xià bān hái zhēn shi yǒu diànr bù fāngbian.

A: Xiānzài hái yǒu hěn duō gōngren zhū zai chénglì ma?

B: Yǒu, hái yǒu bù shǎo jīshu rényuán yě zhū zai chénglì. Tèbié shì nèixià bù zài yíge chăng gōngzuòde shuāngzhīgōng, shàng xià bān jī gōnggōng qīchē, bǐ shàng bān hǎi lèi, shíjiān chǎnglè zěnme xīng ne? Suǒyǐ wōmen zài mǎng yě déi kuài yídīǎnr duō gāi jīdōng zhīgōng sūshè.

A: Rān tāmén dōu bān dào chéngwài lāi zhū?

B: Bù, tāmén kěyǐ zhū zài sūshèlǐ, mǎi ge Xīngqīlì huī jiā jiu xīng le. Zhèbié yīng, Xīngqīlì dào Xīngqīwū yě yǒu shíjiān tāmén jīu kěyǐ zài wōmen chǎngdē yèdāxué xuān kē, nà duō hǎo!

A: Xiānzài zài yèdāxué niān shūde gōngren duō ma?

B: Bù shǎo, chābudùō yǒu yībān yīshàngde qīngnián gōngren dōu xuān yǐmén, liǎngmén kē. Tīng lāoshīmen shuō, xiānzài xuēshēngde shuǐpíng dōu kuài yào gānshāng Wènhuà Dà Gēmíng yīqiānde xuēshēng la!

Your factory's family housing is all very clean and very new!

Our factory's housing is pretty good. The factory's leadership says that a few more buildings are going to be built, too.

Isn't there enough housing yet?

No. Our factory is very far from the city. It's really pretty inconvenient for the staff and workers who live in the city to get to and from work.

Are there still a lot of workers living in town?

Yes, and there are also a lot of technical personnel living in town. Especially for those working couples who don't work in the same factory, wrestling with the buses before and after work is even more tiring than work itself. How can you expect them to keep that up very long? So no matter how busy we are, we have to put up a few new buildings for staff and workers.

And have them all move from the town out here?

No, they can stay in the dormitories here, but go home every Saturday. That way, from Monday to Friday, they can take courses after work at our factory's evening university, which would be great.

Are there a lot of workers taking classes at the evening university now?

Quite a few. Roughly over half of our young workers take one or two courses. According to the teachers, the students' level has practically caught up with the pre-Cultural Revolu-
TVL, Unit 7

A: Kěxiē wǒde shūjiān ānpái de tài jǐn, yāobúzài wǒ hái zhèn xiǎng zài yèdáruǎ tíngtīng kě ne.

B: Nǐn zěi shūjiān tíng kě, qù bǐ yě dàxuēde lǎoshì tāntān yě hǎo ma.

A: Ňg, kǎi tíng tāmen jièshào jiè-shào qǐngkuāng.

B: Zōu, wǒmen dào bāngōngshì qu, qǐng dāoyǒu těngzhī xiàuzǎi jiù péi nǐmen qù yídāng.

A: Hǎo, zōu.

It's too bad that I have such a tight schedule, otherwise I'd really like to sit in on some evening university classes.

If you don't have time to sit in on any classes, why not go talk with some of the evening university's teachers?

Mr. I could get some information about the university from them.

Let's go to the office and ask the guide to accompany us right now.

Okay, let's go.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American tourist (A) visiting a train engine factory in the north of China stops in at the kitchen of the factory dining hall and talks with the chef (B).

A: Dá shífú, mǎngzhe ma?

B: Bù máng, bù máng, jǐnlái zuò, wǒ gěi nǐmen cháoè liàngge xiǎo cāi, qǐng nǐmen chāngchàng.

A: Wǒmen zài jīngwǎi yīge shūtáng chǐguò fàn le, chīde hǎo bāo.

B: Zài bāo yě děi chāngchàng, zhè shì tāngcūde, wǒ zhídào nǐmen xī- huan chī?

A: Wǒ jíde wǒ zài nà chǐguo, duì le, shì zài Huáshēngdùde yīge Zhōngguó fāngwǎnr, wǒcǐ qù wǒ dōu qǐng tāmen zuò zhēcì.

B: Xīhuan chī jiù bǎ ta dōu chīle ba! Méi gǎngcái shuōde nèige fāng- guǎnr shì Shānghǎi fāngwǎnr ma?

A: Shì. Hūnlái wǒ lǎikāi dōngbù jiù zài yě máí chǐguo nàme xiǎochī cāi le.

B: Lái, bǎ ta dōu xiǎomiè, wǎn- shāng wǒ zài gěi nǐmen zuò bǐde.

You must be very busy, chef.

No, no, come in and sit down. I made a couple of little stir-fried dishes for you. Please try them.

We've already eaten in another dining hall. We're very full.

No matter how full you are you must try them. This one is sweet and sour, I know you people like that.

I remember having this somewhere. Oh yes, it was in a Chinese restaurant in Washington. Whenever I went there I used to ask them to make this.

If you like it, then eat it all! Is the restaurant you just mentioned a Shānghǎi-style restaurant?

Yes. Later I left the east and never had such delicious food again.

Come on, polish it off. Tonight I'll make you some other things.
A:  xièxiè nǐn, dà shīfu. Mǐn bù shì zhèrde rén ba?

B:  Bù shì, wǒ shì Wǔxī rén.

A:  Zài Chǎng Jiāng yīběi?

B:  Óu, nǐ gǎocuò le, Chǎngjiāng yǐnān!

A:  Wǒ fāxiàn Jiāngnán rén xǐhuān tiándé hē lǎde.

B:  Zhèi dǎo shì shuí duìde. Wǒmen Jiāngnán rén zuò cāi bù shì tiándé jiǔ shì lǎde.

A:  Nǐmen shūtáng měitiān yòng zhème duō cāi, dōu shì cóng fǔjīn gōngghè mǎi de ma?

B:  Nǎlǐ? Wénhuà Dà Gémíng yīqián wǒmen zhēge zhīziōchǎng hē bié de dā chǎng yǐyāng, dōu yǒu zǐjīde nōngchǎng, cāidì shènme de. Dā shūtáng de cāi bù yǒng shuō le, jiǔ shì yǒuèyuán háizi jīn chǐ shuǐguǒ shènme de yě dōu shì zijī zhòngde.

A:  Hǎuliái ne?

B:  Hǎuliái, Wénhuà Dà Gémíng le, nōngchǎng, cāidì dōu bèi guòduó luánqīcǎo, chǐdē dōngxi zhēn jǐnzhǎng, yú a, ròude bù yǒng shuō le, lián cāi dōu bù gōu chī le.

A:  Xiǎnzài hǎo le.

B:  Yī jīn qǐ qǐ nián, chǎng lǐngdǎo hǎoxiào quānchǎng lǐngyùn gōngchéng shēnhū, nōngchǎng a, yǔchǎng a, yǒu bǎngqǐlái le, qìngxīng jiū hǎo-duó le. bǐ kàn, zěnmé duǒ cāi,

“Thank you. Chef, you’re not from this area, are you?

No, I'm from Wuxi.

North of the Yangtze River?

Oh, you've got it wrong, south of the Yangtze!

I notice that people from Jiangnan [the area south of the lower reaches of the Yangtze] like sweet foods and hot foods.

That's true enough. When we people from Jiangnan cook, if it isn't sweet then it's hot.

You use so much food here in your dining hall, do you buy it all from the neighboring communes?

Oh, no! Before the Cultural Revolution our factory had its own farm, vegetable plots, and so on, as other large factories did. Of course, we grew the food used in the large dining halls, but we even grew all the fruits and things the children in the kindergartens ate.

And then?

Then it was the Cultural Revolution, and the farm and vegetable plots were ruined. Food was in very short supply. Fish and meats were of course tight, but there weren't even enough vegetables.

Now it's better.

In 1977, the factory leadership appealed to all the factory's workers to improve daily living conditions. We started the farm and the fishery again, and things were much better.

*The reason for the phrasing of this sentence is that the food used in the large dining halls (that is, where the workers eat) is of relatively low quality, while the fruits and foods for the kindergarten children are of a fancier grade. The chef thus means, "We didn't just grow low quality foods, we even grew fancy things."
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 1

An American student in China (A) is walking from Běijīng University into town one weekend. (Not many people would do this, because it is a two-hour walk.) Near the People’s University (Rénmín Dàxué) on Hǎidīǎn Lù, she stoops down to pick a flower on the side of the road. A boy holding a hoe calls out to her.

B: Wèi! Bié zhǎi bié zhǎi! Zhè huār bù néng suībiān zhǎi ya! Hey! Don’t pick those! Don’t pick those! Those flowers aren’t for picking!

A: Dùfúqǐ. Thèixìè huār dōu shì nǐmen zhòngde ma? I’m sorry. Did you plant these flowers?

B: Shì, yánzhē zhèitiāo gōnglù yǐzhí dào dōngwúyuán, lǔbìānrshāngdē huār dōu shì wǒmen zhòngde. Yes. We planted all the flowers along the side of the highway all the way to the zoo.

A: NY shì Rénmín Dàxuéde gōnggén? Are you a worker from the People’s University?

B: Bú shì, wǒ shì Huángzhǔhuāng Dàdūde shèyuán. No, I’m a commune member from Huángzhǔhuāng Production Brigade.

A: NY jiālǐde rèn dōu zài Huángzhǔhuāng ma? Is your whole family in Huángzhǔhuāng?

B: Zài Huángzhǔhuāng jiù yǒu wǒ fūmǔ gēn wǒ. In Huángzhǔhuāng there are only my parents and myself.

A: NY yǒu xiōngdǐ jiěmèi ma? Do you have brothers and sisters?

B: Yě, wǒ yǒu yīge gēgē zài tiělù- shāng gōngzuò, shì hūcé sījī. Yǒu yīge gēgē zài Shǒudū Gāngzhì Gōngsī gōngzuò, tīngshuō tāmen zhīzède dōngxi yǒu bù shāo hái chū guó ne! Yes, I have an older brother who works on the railroad. He’s an engineer. And I have an older brother who works at the Capital Iron and Steel Company. I understand that a lot of the things they manufacture go abroad.
A: Nǐmen dàduìde shèngchān jīnxīng-de zēmeyèng a?

B: Wǒ tīng wǒ fùqín shuō, cóng chǎnliàngshāng kàn, Nǐmen dàduìde qīngkuāng bā cuò. Jīnqián wǒmen dàduìde zōng shōurù děngyú Wēnhuà Dà Gě́ming shīnián shōurùde yībèi!

A: Hē! Zhèi shì zhēnde?!

B: Wǒ mǎ yē nàmē shuō, Wēnhuà Dà Gě́ming nèi shìhòu wǒ huí xiǎo, dàdūlǐ fāshēngde shìr, wǒ dōu bù zēnméng qǐngchu. Wǒ jiù jǐde nèi shìhòu tiāntiān kāi huì, nǐ shūō dàrènmén mǎng ba, hàoxiāng yě bù zēnméng máng, fānzhēng shì kān tamen zōngshì bù tài gāoxīng.

A: Xìanziǐ nǐ jiālǐ rén dōu gāoxīng ba?

B: Gāoxīng, tābì shì wǒ mā, yí dāo Xīngqǐtān jiù tuǐfāng yībù xiǎo chē, shāng zǐyǒu shìchāng le. Tā cháng gēn wǒ shuō, hǎishì zhěihūr-de zhēngcè hǎo a!

A: Nǐ zìjǐ zēmeyèng a? Yǒu shēnmé dāsuàn meiyǒu a?

B: Yǒu, wǒ fùqín zhòng huārde jīshu kě gāo la! Tā zhōngle yībèi huār. Tā gēn wǒ shuō zānméng zhèr shì fēngjǐnggū, zānméng bā huār zhōnghuále, nèng gěi guǒjiā zhùhuān wēihuí yá!

A: Nǐ jīnqián shìjīn le?

B: Shǐjǐ le. Wǒ fùqín hǎi zhǎolái yǐběn shū, shì guānyú zhòng huārde, wǒ jīntiān wāng zài jiālǐ le, xiāng cǐ nǐ jīngguò zhèr wǒ zài gěi nǐ kān. Wǒ fùqín shuō nà shì kěxué zhòng huār, ràng wǒ hāohāo xué.

A: Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng shèng huāng dàxué?

How is your brigade's production going?

My father says that from the point of view of yield, our brigade is doing well. This year the total income of the brigade is equal to one time the income over the ten years of the Cultural Revolution!

Wow! Is that true?!

My mother says the same thing. I was still young during the Cultural Revolution, and I don't know very well what went on in our brigade. I just remember that during that time there were meetings every day. But were the grown-ups really busy—-not really. In any case, they never looked very happy.

But now everybody in your family is happy, aren't they?

Yes. Especially my mother. Every Sunday she goes to the free market, pushing a little cart. She often says to me that the [government's] policy is much better now.

What about yourself? Do you have any plans?

Yes, my father is a real expert at growing flowers. He's been growing flowers all his life. He told me that this is a scenic area, and if we planted flowers, we could bring in a lot of foreign exchange for the state.

How old are you this year? [presuming him to be a teenager]  

Fourteen. My father even got a book on flower growing. I left it at home today, but the next time you pass by here I'll show it to you. My father says that it's scientific flower growing and told me to study it hard.

Do you want to go to college?
TVL, Unit 7

B: Xiăng shàng! Hòunián wǒ jiù gāozhōng biyw le, wǒ kǎo Nónyè Dàxuě, jiù xué zhōng huǎr.

A: Hǎo! Zàijiàn!

B: Zàijiàn! Bié jǐ, wǒ gěi ni zhāi liǎngduǒ huǎr.

A: Xièxié ni.

Yes! The year after next I graduate from high school and I'm going to take the exam for Agricultural University. I'm going to study flower growing.

Great! So long!

So long! Hold on, let me pick you a couple of flowers.

Thanks.
Unit 8, Reference List

1. A: Zài Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyìhuìshāng jiù zuò chūkòu mǎimai ma? Do they only do export business at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?
   B: Bú jiù shì chūkòu, yě yǒu hěn duō rén zài nà tān jǐnkòu mǎo yì. Not just export business. Many people also do import trade there.

2. A: Zhèi yǐge jīng’i tégu yuè lái yuè fāngréng le. These special economic zones are getting more and more prosperous.
   B: Shì a! Jǐnchūkòu mǎo yì, jiā-gōng gōngyè yuè gāo yuè duō le. Yes! Import-export trade and the processing industry are on the upswing.

3. A: Guǎngjīāoyìhuìshāngde dōngxi jiàqian zēnmeyǎng? How are the prices at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?
   B: Jiàqian dōu hái bù cuò, wǎiguó shāngyì hěn shǎo yǒu kōng-shōu huíquè. The prices are pretty good. It's very seldom that a foreign businessman goes home empty-handed.

4. A: Jǐngjí tèqù de Zhōngguó gōngyè shòu rù bǐjiǎo gāo, nà hui bu hui chūxīn yīge xīn de jīlǐ ne? Since the income of Chinese workers in the special economic zones is higher, is it possible a new class will appear?
   B: Méiyǒu nàme yánzhòng! Gěi zhèngfǔ huì ěn zhèngcè bāndé. It's not that serious! Every level of the government will go according to policy.

5. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ shì bu shì xiǎnzǐ xiāozǐpín de jǐnkòu? Does the Chinese government restrict consumer-good imports?
   B: Dàhuí wǒ gěi nín nà yìfèn cái liào, nín yǐ kàn jiù qǐngchù le. I'll bring you some materials in a while. As soon as you read them you'll know the answer.

6. A: Zài yǐge gōngchǎnglǐ, gōngzuò xiǎolū gāo děi gōngyè cái néng tígāo gōngzī, duì ba? In a factory only workers with high efficiency can get a pay raise, right?
   B: Duì a! Duō láo duō dě ma! Right! More pay for more work, you know!
7. A: Lǎo Zhāng, jǐntiān kāi shénme huānsònghuì?
   Lǎo Zhāng, what's the farewell meeting for today?

   B: Huānsòng ōuzhōu de lǚshì dàitiětuān.
   We're sending off the European delegation of lawyers.

   Since the Sino-American sea transportation treaty, the coastal region has become even busier.

   B: Shì a, kānqílai yǐhòu de shìnian, zhějī jíge dà hǎigāng huǐ yǒu dà guīmóde fāzhǎn.
   Yes. It looks as if these large ports will experience tremendous growth in the next decade.

   Have you heard the news? Some very important people are coming tonight.

   B: Jǐntiān dē wǎnhú yídīng hěn yǒu yāo yī, qiānwàn bǐ wǎn le. Tōngtiān's party is sure to be interesting. You mustn't be late!

10. A: Wǒ yào cānguān jíoxué shèbèi. I want to see the educational equipment.

    B: Jíoxué shèbèi dōu jīzhòng nǎi zhèjī gè tīnglǐ de, huānyíng cānguān. The educational equipment is all together in this large hall. You're welcome to see it.

    China and America have made a lot of plans to cooperate in various fields.

    B: Yē. Gāng yīn yīn dào Fājiān de zhèxī de shèbèi jiù shì nàxiē jīhuà de yībúfēn. Mm. The equipment which was just shipped to Fājiān is a part of those plans.
Unit 8, Vocabulary List

chūkǒu  to export
chūxǐàn  to appear
dài bì lù tuán  delegation, mission
dāi huîr  in a while, later
dà tīng  (large) hall
dǐng  to draw up (a plan); to agree on;
       to conclude (a treaty)
duō lǎo duō dé  more pay for more work
fānróng  to be flourishing, to be prosp-
           perous, to be booming
Fūjiàn  (a province in south China)
gōngzǐ  wages
Guāngjiāo huì  Guǎngzhōu (Canton) Trade Fair
guǐmō  scale, scope, dimensions
hǎigāng  harbor, seaport
hēzuò  to cooperate; cooperation
huǎnsōng  to see off, to send off
huǎnsōng huì  farewell/send-off meeting
           or party
-jí  level, rank, grade, stage, degree
jīgōng  to process, to finish (a product)
jījīyīhùi  trade fair
jiàqian  price
jiějī  (social) class
jīnxūshǒu  import-export
jīngjī tè qū  special economic zone (SEZ)
jǐnkuò  to import
jǐzhōng  to concentrate, to centralize
kōngshǒu  empty-handed
lǜshī  lawyer, attorney
mào yì  trade
qiânwàn  without fail, be sure to
shāngrén  businessman/businesswoman; merchant
shèbèi  equipment, facilities, installation
tiáoyuè  treaty
wǎnhuì  evening party; evening of enter-
        tainment

209
xiǎnzhi  to restrict, to limit; restriction, limitation
xiāofèipǐn consumer goods
xiāolǜ efficiency
xiāoxi news
yánzhòng  to be serious, to be grave
yī...jiù... as soon as
yùn  to transport, to ship
REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Zài Guǎngzhōu Jiāoyíhuìshāng jiù zuǒ chūkòude zěnméi ma? Do they only do export business at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?

B: Bú jiù shì chūkòu, yě yǒu hěn duō rén zài nàr jǐnkòu mǎoyì. Not just export business. Many people also do import trade there.

Notes on No. 1

Jiāoyíhuì: "trade fair" Jiǎoyí means "business, trade, transaction," and huì is the same word you know from kāi huì, "to have a meeting." The full name of the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair is Zhōngguó Chūkòu Shāngpǐn Jiāoyíhuì, the Chinese Export Commodities Fair (CECF). Since the first CECF in 1957, every spring and autumn Guǎngzhōu is inundated with businessmen and people of all walks of life connected with trade—more than 25,000 at each Fair. Chinese agricultural and industrial products are displayed in the Fairground buildings and open areas, located on Hǎizhū Guǎngchāng (Haizhu Square) between the railroad station and the Dōngfāng Bīnguǎn (Dongfang Hotel). The Fair is held from April 15 to May 15 and from October 15 to November 15.

As the name implies, the CECF's main purpose is to assist China's state trading corporations in exporting goods, but some large import contracts are signed there each year as well.

Chūkòu, "to export" and jǐnkòu, "to import":

Rìběn měinián chūkòu hěn duō qìchē. Japan exports a lot of cars every year.

Wǒ zěn bù dǒng wǒshèmé Zhōngguó chūkòude dōngxi zǒng shì bǐ guónèi mǎide hǎo. I really don't understand why the things China exports are always better than those it sells domestically.

Mǎoyì: "trade," as in guónèi mǎoyì, "domestic trade"; mǎoyì zhōngxīn, "trade center"; mǎoyì zhōngxīn, "trade wind."

Zhōu Libīngge guójì jiǔzūn jīnǐnián chǐ kǎishǐ jǐnxǐng mǎoyì. It is only in the past few years that these two countries have started to have trade (with each other).

Tán is used in the sense of "negotiate" in such phrases as tān mǎoyì, "do trade (negotiating)," tān shēngyì, "do business," etc.
2. A: Zhèi jīge jīngjì tèqū yuē lái yuē fānróng le.
   These special economic regions are getting more and more prosperous.

   B: Shì a! jīnchāng kǒu mǎng, jiā-gōng gōngyè yuē gāo yuē duō le.
   Yes! Import-export trade and the processing industry are on the upswing.

Notes on No. 2

jīngjì tèqū: Literally, "economic special-district," translated as "special economic zones," and abbreviated as SEZ. SEZs are designated areas similar to the export processing zones (EPZs) which have been extremely successful in places such as Taiwan. China established SEZs to bring in the foreign capital needed to create jobs and modernize the national economy. In these zones, foreign investors' assets, profits, and other rights and interests are legally protected, and their operations enjoy tax and duty exemptions. Proposed investment projects are examined and approved by the Provincial Administration of the SEZ, which also draws up its own development plans and organizes their implementation. The SEZs compete with each other for foreign investment. As of 1981, Guǎngdōng province had three SEZs—Shēnzhēn, Zhūbǎi (near Macao), and Shāntōu—and other SEZs had been established in Fōjīān province and Hāînán Island. A wide variety of enterprises have already been set up.

fānróng: "to be flourishing/prosperous/booming"

Rìběnde shāngyè hěn fānróng.
Japan's commerce is flourishing.

Shínián yīshǐ, zhèige dīfang hùi biān děng fānróng le.
Ten years from now, this place will become even more prosperous.

Cōng zhèige zhǎnlǎnhuìshàng de dōngxi, nǐ kěyì kàndào fānróng de Měiguó wénhuà.
From the things in this exhibition, you can see the flourishing American culture.

Fānróng can also mean "to make something prosper":

Bān jīngyǐhuì de mùdì jiù shì yào fānróng jīngjì.
The purpose of holding trade fairs is to promote economic prosperity.

jiā-gōng: (1) "to finish" a product, i.e., to work on a half-finished or finished article to make it more perfect or finer; (2) "to process" a raw material into a finished product.
3. A: Guăngjìsōuhuìshàngde dōngxi jiàqian zěnmeyáng? How are the prices at the Guăngzhōu Trade Fair?

B: Jiàqian dōu hái bù cuò, wǎiguó shǎngyì hěn shào yǒu kōngshǒu hu íqude. The prices are pretty good. It's very seldom that a foreign businessman goes home empty-handed.

Notes on No. 3

Guăngjìsōu: This is an abbreviation of Guăngzhōu Jiāoyìhuì.

jiàqian: "price"

Zhèige píngguǒ shénme jiàqian? How much are these apples?

Tāmende dōngxi hěn hǎo, jiàqian yě bù cuò. Their things are very good, and the prices are pretty good, too.

Jīng jiàqian means "to bargain, to haggle":

Zài Zhōngguóde shāngdiānle, bù kěyì jīng jiàqian, dānshì zài zìyǔ shìchāngshàng kěyì. You cannot bargain in stores in China, but you can in the free markets.

kōngshǒu: "empty-handed" Kōng means "to be empty," as in

Zhèige xiāngzi shì kōngdè. This case is empty.

Kōngshǒu is used adverbially:

Wǒ bù hǎo yīsī kōngshǒu dào tā jiā qu. I would be embarrassed to go to his house empty-handed.

4. A: Jīngji tègūde Zhōngguó gōnggèn shìwù bǐjiāo gāo, nà huì bu huì chūxuàn yīge xīndé jiājī ne? Since the income of Chinese workers in the special economic regions is higher, is it possible a new class will appear?

B: Méiyǒu nàme yánzhòng! Gèjǐ zhèngfǔ huì ān zhēngcè bānè. It's not that serious! Every level of the government will go according to policy.

Notes on No. 4

chūxuàn: "to appear" As with fāshēng, "to happen," which you learned in the previous unit, chūxuàn is often followed in the sentence by the thing that appears, whereas in English the thing usually precedes "appear" ("Will a new class appear?").
Zhēige wèntí zài gāng chūxiànde shíhou, méiyou rén fàxiàn, xiànzài zhǐdào yǐjīng tài wán le.
When this problem first appeared, no one discovered it. Now that we've found out about it, it's too late.

Tàiyáng chūxiàn zài dōngfāngde shíhou, jiù shì xīn de yītiān kāishǐ le.
When the sun appears in the east, it means that a new day is beginning. [tàiyáng, "sun"]

Zhēige shíhou, qiánmiàn chūxiàn yǐtiáo dà hē, shì wǒ méi xiǎngdào de.
At this moment, a large river appeared up ahead, something I had not expected.

jiējì: "(social) class" In the PRC, this word enters into many special phrases such as jiēji jiàoyu, "class education" (which consists of recounting the difficult past to schoolchildren and younger workers).

Shìjiēshāng méiyou yīge méiyou jiējìde shèhùi.
There is no society in the world which is without classes.

yánzhòng: "to be serious, to be grave".

Zhēige qíngkuàng xiāngdāng yánzhòng.
This situation is quite serious.

Zhōngguó yǒu yánzhòng de rénkǒu wèntí.
China has a serious population problem.

Zhēige wèntí bù shì yánzhòng dào yídǐng yào qīng lǐngdào lái juédìng.
This problem is not so serious that we have to ask our leader to decide it.

Nǐ hái méi kānchū zhēge wèntí de yánzhòngxìng.
You still haven't discerned the seriousness of this problem.

-ji: "level, rank, stage, grade, degree"

Zhèi yíji lǐngdào hǎi bù néng juédìng zěnmē bān, nǐ děi zhǎo shàngjí lǐngdào.
This level leader cannot decide what to do. You must go to an upper-level leader.

Gānbù yǐgōng yǒu ěrshíliù ji, shīji ěrshāngde kěyǐ kān yǐzhōng pìtóng rèn kǎnbùdào de bāozhǐ.
Altogether, there are twenty-six grades of cadres. Those above grade ten may read a newspaper that ordinary people cannot read. (The Cǎnkǎo Zǐliào, "Reference Materials")

Nǐ zhè xiē zhěn gāojí!
These shoes of yours are really classy!
5. A: Zhōngguó zhèngfǔ shì bù shì xiànzhi xiāofèi píndè jīnkǒu?  
B: Dǎihuí wǒ gěi nín nà yǐfēn  
    cāiliāo, nǐ yǐ kàn jiù qǐngchu le.  

Does the Chinese government restrict consumer-good imports?  
I'll bring you some materials in a while. As soon as you read them  
you'll know the answer.

Notes on No. 5

xiànzhi: "to restrict, to limit" or "restriction, limitation"

Wǒ shì rèn xiànzhi wǒ méi ge yuè  
chōu qíkùài qián  

My spouse limits me to smoking  
seven dollars' worth of cigarettes  
a month.

Wèile xiànzhi rénmíng de zìyóu,  
zhèngfǔ dīngle bù shǎo guīju.

The government has set up a lot of  
rules to restrict the people's freedom.

Zài gāocuì gōnglù shàng, bǎ qìchē-  
de sūdō xiànzhi zāi wǒshìwú-  
yīnglǐ yǐxià shí bǐjiāo bāoshìde.  

It is rather appropriate to limit  
the speed of cars on the express-  
way to fifty-five miles an hour.

Yǒu bù shǎo xiànzhi zhēn ràng  
rén gǎobudōng wèishēnmé yào  
zhème zuò.  

There are many restrictions that  
leave one at a loss as to why  
one has to do it that way.

Yǐnwèi shìjiān de xiànzhi, wǒ  
měi néng zuòdào wǒ kěyì zuòde  
nàme hǎo.  

Because of time restrictions, I was  
not able to do as well as I could  
have.

Xiànzhi is often used in the phrase shòu xiànzhi, "to be restricted" (literally, "to receive restriction"):  

Zài nèige guójiā, wàiguó rén  
lǚxíng shòudào hěn dà xiànzhi.  

In that country, foreigners are  
very restricted when they travel.

xiāofèi: "to consume"

Zhèige gōngchǎng yǐtiān xiāofèi  
dūshāo máitàn?  

How much coal does this factory  
consume a day?

Yǐqián Bēijīng jīù shì yíge  
xiāofèi chéngshì, shēnmé yě  
bù shèngchān.  

Bēijīng used to be just a consumer  
city; it didn't produce a thing.

Xiāofèizhě is a "consumer."

Dǎihuí: A Bēijīng expression equivalent to dēng yīhuír in the sense  
of "in (after) a while":  

Dǎihuí wǒ sòng nǐ hùiqu.  

In a little while, I'll take you  
back.

215
Wǒ xiǎnzài xiǎn qù yǒu diān
shì, dāihuì jǐu lái.

Let me first go and take care of
something I have to do; I’ll be
back in a minute.

yǐ... jǐu...: "as soon as..." You already know that jǐu means "then"
in the sense of immediately thereafter, e.g.,

Tā shuōwán jǐu zǒu le.
He left right after he finished
speaking.

When using the adverb yǐ, "as soon as," jǐu is often used in the following
clause.

Tā yǐ dào, wǒmen jǐu kěyì zǒu le.
We can leave as soon as he gets
here.

Tiān yǐ liàng, tā jǐu qǐlái kāi-
shǐ gōngzuò.
As soon as it gets light out, he
gets up and starts to work.

Wǒ yǐ kàn jǐu mǐngbái le.
I understood as soon as I looked
at it (or read it).

Tā yǐ tíng zhěi jǔ huà jǐu jǐ le.
He got anxious (upset) as soon as
he heard this sentence.

Wǒ yǐ fǎxiàn hūzhào diū le, mǎ-
shāng jǐu dào lǐngshèguǎn qù
le.
As soon as I discovered that I had
lost my passport, I immediately
went to the consulate.

Tā zěnme yǐ qù jǐu shì bāntiān?
What’s taking him so long?

Sometimes yǐ... jǐu... is used in the sense of "every time," or "whenever"
(i.e., once certain conditions come about, something is sure to happen):

Wǒ dōu zhèrde lù hǎi bù shū, yǐ
bù zhùyǐ jǐu hui zǒucūō.
I’m still not very familiar with
the roads here. I go the wrong way
whenever I’m not paying attention.

Píngcháng tā hěn máng, kěshì yǐ
dào Xīngqītiān, tā jǐu yào kāi
chē chūqu wǎnr.
Usually he is very busy, but when
Sunday comes he always goes out in
his car to have fun.

Wǒ yǐ hě jǐu jǐu tōu yún.
I get dizzy whenever I drink.

Tā měi cí yǐ yǒu wèntí jǐu xiāng-
dào wǒ, měi wèntí déshuò wǒ
cōnglái bù jīzhē wǒ.
He thinks of me whenever he has a
problem, but never remembers me
when he doesn’t have any problems.

Yǐ is sometimes used without jǐu in a following clause, as in

Wǒ gāng yǐ tíng hǎoxiǎng bū duí,
hǎuli yǐ xiǎng, duí le.
When I first heard it, it didn’t sound
right, but then after I thought about
it, [I realized] it was right.
6. A: 在工厂里工人的工效会很高，工人会干得好。看起来工人可能会得高工资，对吧？
   B: 对啊！多劳多得嘛！
   Right! More pay for more work, you know!

Notes on No. 6

xiào lǜ: "efficiency"
Tā de xuéxiào xiào lǜ hěn gāo, yītiān néng kān bù shāo shū, hǎi néng jīzhǔ bù shāo.
He is very efficient in his studies. He can read a lot in one day and remember a great deal too.

Wēile tígāo shìjiān xiào lǜ, wǒmen bǐxù jīzhōng liùliàng.
We must pool our forces in order to improve our efficiency. (Shìjiān xiào lǜ just means efficiency within a certain period of time.)

cái: You have seen cái meaning "only when, not until" (yìng míng tiān cái dào, "he isn't coming until tomorrow") and meaning "only in that case, not unless" (zhè yè wǒng zūn suǒ néng bāochí xiǎo qù, "Only in this way can Chinese culture be preserved"). In sentence 6A, the necessary condition is gōng zuò xiào lǜ gāo. Since cái is an adverb, it must always precede the verb (here, néng), whereas in English, "only" precedes whatever it refers to (here, the noun phrase "workers with high efficiency").

7. A: 廖张，今天开什么 hūn sòng hú?
   B: Huān sòng Guó wù duó lǐ wù dà bīng qù wùn.
   We're sending off the European delegation of lawyers.

Notes on No. 7

hūn sòng: Literally, "joyously send off," this is a formal word for "to give someone a send-off." The ordinary word is just sòng.

dài bīng: "to represent, to stand for" or a "representative, delegate"

Wǒmen bù néng dōu qù. Wǒ yì
dài bīng, hǎo bu hǎo?
We can't all go. Why don't you stand in, okay?

Wǒ yì dài bīng shì shuí?
Whom do you represent?

Tā dài bīng tā gōng sī qū cān jiā nèige jī yóu hùi.
He went to the trade fair representing his company.

As a prepositional verb, dài bīng can be translated as "on behalf of" or "in the name of":

217
I thank you on behalf of the comrades at the China Travel Service.

Since the Sino-American sea transportation treaty, the coastal region has become even busier.

Yes. It looks as if these large ports will experience tremendous growth in the next decade.

Notes on No. 8

Mìyuàn tíyuè: "sea transportation treaty" The word tíyuè, "treaty," "pact," is used loosely here, for it was technically an "agreement" (xiédìng) which was signed between the U.S. and China on September 17, 1980. The maritime transport agreement stipulates that the U.S. open all its ports to China and China open specified ports to the U.S. (some Chinese ports do not have sufficient facilities). One third of the commercial shipping is to be handled by Chinese or American vessels.

guǐmó: "scope, scale"

Zhèige gōngchǎngde guǐmó bù xiǎo, jìù shì jíshù lìliàng tài ruò le. The scope of this factory is quite large, it's just that its technical capability is too weak.

Zhōngguó dà guǐmóde gài gōngyù dàlòu, zhèijiān háishí diànyīfú. It is only in the past few years that China has started to build high-rise apartment buildings on a large scale.

Notes on No. 9

xiǎoxi: "news" This has a few meanings: (1) "news" between people—"tidings"; (2) "news" reported in a newspaper, news periodical, or newscast (this meaning is shared in common with xǐnwén); (3) "information" in the sense of "intelligence," "news" about someone or something (e.g., "Is this information reliable?").

Yǒu shénme xiǎoxi? What information is there?
Wǒ gào su nǐ ge hǎo xiăoxī!

Hên chăng shìjiān méiyòu tāde xiăoxī le.

qiānwān: "under any circumstances; by no means; be sure"

Qiānwān yào xiăoxīn, tiān bēi le, lù bu hào zǒu.

Nǐ dàole yīhòu qiānwān lái gé diànhuà.

Qiānwān bù yào wàngjì běi nèiběn shū dáilái, wǒ míngtiān yào yòng.

Zhèjiān shì, qiānwān bù nèng ràng ta zhídào.

Let me give you some good news!

We haven't heard from him (OR about him) for a long time.

Be sure to be careful. It's dark out, so it's difficult to travel.

When you arrive, be sure to call.

Make sure you don't forget to bring that book; I need it for tomorrow.

He must absolutely not find out about this.

10. A: Wǒ yào cānguān jiàoxué shè bèi. I want to see the educational equipment.

B: Jiàoxué shè bèi dōu jízhōng zài zhèjīng dà tíng lǐ le, huānyíng cānguān. The educational equipment is all together in this large hall. You're welcome to see it.

Notes on No. 10

shè bèi: "equipment; facilities; installation"

Yǒude chǎng suífán shè bèi hěn hào, dànsì shēngchān hǎishì gōubùhǎo. In some factories, although the equipment is very good, production is still poor.

Cóng Déguó jǐnkiě shèxiān shè bèi dābūfān shì yǐxuè fāngmìng. Most of this equipment imported from Germany is for use in medicine.

Zhègè gōngyùde shè bèi bǐ zhè fǔjīn de biéde gōngyù dōu hǎo. The facilities in this apartment building are better than those of any other in the area.

jízhōng: "to concentrate; to centralize; to put together"

Bǐ lǐliàng jízhōng zài xué Zhōng-wénshǎng shì bù xíngde, yīnwèi hǎi yǒu xūduō biéde shì yào zuò. It won't do to concentrate all your effort on studying Chinese, because you have many other things to do.

Zhìpiān wénzhǎng jízhōngle jǐge rén de kǎnǐ, suǒyì kǎnqílái hěn yǒu yìsì. This article assembles the opinions of several people, so it is very interesting to read.
Zài rén kǒu jǐzhòng de dà chéngshì zhù hěn yōu yīsī.

Wínhuì shàng xīyuè de dōngxī dōu yào jǐzhòng fāngfǎ huó de.

Zhèixiē dōngxī fāng zài zhèli jǐzhòng xǐe bù hǎo ma?

It is very interesting to live in a big city with a concentrated population.

The things that will be needed at the evening party should all be put together in one place.

Wouldn't it be better to put those things here, all together in one place?


B: Nǐ. Gāng yǐn lào Fǔjiān de zhèixiē shēbā jiù shì nǐ xiē de yībù fēn.

China and America have made a lot of plans to cooperate in various fields.

Mm. The equipment which was just shipped to Fǔjiān is a part of those plans.

Notes on No. 11

Zhōng-Měi liǎngguó: "China and America, the two countries" This is a formal way of saying Zhōngguó hé Měiguó.

hézú: "together-do," i.e., "to cooperate"

Wǒmen dāi hézú zhēijiān shì cāi nèng bānde hǎo.

Tā bù yào gèn wǒ hézú. We must work together on this if we are to do it well.

He doesn't want to cooperate with me.

Xiānzi zhōngguó hé wǎngguó shāng-rende hézú yuē lái yuē dōu le. China is having more and more cooperation with foreign merchants.

Hé- can also be used before other one-syllable verbs, for example,

Zhēibēn shū shì wǒmen hěn xǐde. We wrote this book together.

dīng: "to agree on; to draw up (a plan); to conclude (a treaty)"

Zānmén dīng ge xuěxi jiān bǎi. We won't learn a thing if we keep on like this.

Zhēiyáng xiāqu, shēnme yě xué-budào. More than a century ago, the Qīng Dynasty government concluded many treaties with foreign countries that were very bad for China.

Yībǎidiǎn qián, Qīngcháo zhèngfǔ hé wǎngguó dīngliè bù shǎo duì Zhōngguó hěn bù hǎode tiào yuē.
yun: "to carry, to transport"

Tā qù Zhōngguó de shíhou bā tāde qìchē yě yùnqu le.

Zhèxiē dōngxi fēicháng zhòng, yùnquilai bù fāngbian.

Zhèmé duō dōngxi, hǎiyuǎn bǐ kōngyuǎn piányide duō.

When he went to China, he shipped his car over too.

These things are extremely heavy, and are difficult to transport.

With so many things, it would be much cheaper to ship them by sea than by air.
Unit 8, Review Dialogue

Near the Guǎngzhōu Export Commodities Trade Fair, Miss Sarah Pearson (A), an American lawyer, spots Chén Guóqiáng (B), of the China Travel Service. Chén is carrying a shopping bag.

A: Êi, Xiǎo Chén, mǎi dōngxi qu là?

B: Shi a, lái Guǎngzhōu, bù néng kōngshǒu huìqu, wǒ gěi wǒ àiren mǎile yǐjiān chēnshān.

A: Hē! Hǎo gāojīde chēnshān! Jià-qian yě bù cuò. Dāi huǐr wǒ yě qù mǎi liǎngjiàn. Zhēihǒng chēnshān shì Guǎngzhōu shēngchānde ma?

B: Bú shì, shì Sūzhōu shēngchānde.

A: Wǒmen zài Sūzhōude shìhòu měi jiànguó! Kānqǐlái Zhōngguóde hǎo dōngxi dōu jīzhōng dào Guǎngzhōu lai le!

B: Guǎngjīāohuǐshangde jīgí yà, xiǎo fèipín la, dōu shì cóng Quán-guó yǔnlái de, zhǎnábān yǐhòu jiù zài Guǎngzhōu mǎi, suǒyí zhèr shāngdiànli mǎide dōngxi yǒu duō yǒu hǎo.

A: Xiǎo Chén, wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dà- ting yíxiānr ne, Guǎngzhōu fùjìnde jiāngōng gōngyè xiānzáì fāzhǎnde zěnmeyáng le?

B: Jīn nián lái, fāzhǎnde bù màn. Zhùyào shì zhèxiē gōngchǎng yòu wáiguó gōngsī cānjiā, suǒyí tāmén-de shēngchǎn běn yǒu tèdiǎn.

A: Wǒ jǐntiān zài bāozhǐshang kǎn-dào yīge xiǎoxī, shuō zài jīgí de fāng chénglíle "jīngjí tèqū."


Hey, Xiǎo Chén, have you been out shopping?

Yes. When one comes to Guǎngzhōu, one can't go back empty-handed. I bought a shirt for my wife.

Well! What a classy shirt! The price is also pretty good. Later, I'll go buy a couple, too. Is this kind of shirt produced in Guǎngzhōu?

No, it's produced in Sūzhōu.

We didn't see any when we were in Sūzhōu! Apparently, all of China's good things come together in Guǎngzhōu!

The machines and consumer items at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair are shipped here from all over the country, and after being exhibited, are sold right here in Guǎngzhōu, so the stores here sell a lot of different items, and of good quality.

Xiǎo Chén, I wanted to find out from you how the processing industry in the vicinity of Guǎngzhōu is developing?

In recent years, it has been developing rather quickly. The main thing is that there are some foreign companies participating in these factories, so their production is very distinctive.

I saw a story in the paper today that said that "special economic zones" have been established in several places.

Yes. There are already special zones like this in Guǎngdōng, Fújiàn, and Shānghǎi. In the future, there will probably be even more of them.
TVL, Unit 8

A: 你來你得放罷顧哂洗內díngí jíngì qīngkuàng?

B: 有。我們妳來 Zhōngwěnde, 妳 yě yǒu Yīngwěnde, 妳 xūyào ma?

A: Xǐyào a!

B: 0, duì le, 妳 shì hùshì a! Dāngrán xǐyào le. Wǒ mǐshǎng jiù qù zhǎo. 妳 yào Zhōngwěnde hùshì Yīngwěnde?

A: Wǒ dōu yào.

B: Hǎo, Lǐxíngshè, fāndiānli dōu yǒu, dēng yìxīu huìgu wǒ gāi ní nà. 0! Duì le, kěnèng jiāoyíhuì- li yē yǒu, wǒ qù gāi nǐ wènwen.

A: Hǎo ba! Wǒmen yìqǐ qù, yībiān zǒu yībiān liàoliao.

B: Hǎo... Nǐ dàgāi tīngshūō le, xiānzái jīnchīkōu xiànzhi Běi- jíng shǎo le, wǒmen yǒu hě xǐdú guòjì dīngle māoyì tǐáoyú, kāi- shì gāo jīngjì hězuò. Suò yí zuì jīn zhěxì niánde jiāoyíhuì tè- bié rènào.

A: Zhèi yìdiǎn wǒ yě zhuǐyìdōo le, xiānzáì yǐ zuìjīn jiāoyíhuì dà- tīng, yānjīng jiù bā gòu yòng le, zhēn shì yuè bàn yuè hǎo le, wǒ hái tīngshūō xiānzāi biéde dīfāng yě yǒu xiǎo guǐmòde jiāoyíhuì le, běn dōu yīguō dàbǐhào tuān qū cānjiā, shì ma?

B: Shì. Tèbié shì yǒu ěr Zhōnggāi hǎiyuàn tǐáoyú yǐhòu, jīgē dà hǎi- gāng gèng fānngōng le. Zài zhěxì bāigāng, bāi yǒu Běijīng, xiānzái dōu yǒu xiǎo guǐmòde jiāoyíhuì, yǒu xùdūo wǎiguō shāngrèn zāi nà zuò wǒmái.

A: Duì, duì, duì. Wǒ tīngshūō le. Suò yí wǒ xiǎng yǐhòu yánhái yǐdài huì yǒu hěn dàde fāzhǎn.
B: Wǒ yě zèmě xiǎng.
A: Wǒ hǎi yǒu yīge wèntí, zāi jīng-ji tèqū lǐ gōngzuò dé gōngréng, gōng- zǐ shì bu shì gāo yìdiǎnr ne?
B: Wǒ xiǎng gāo yìdiǎnr.
A: Èr bù shì huǐ chūxiàn yīge xīn de jījī ma?
B: Méi nàme yánzhòng!
A: Wèishénme?
B: Yībāndé lái shuō, yǒu wàiguó gōngsī cānjiādě gōngzhāng, suīrán gōngzǐ gāo yìdiǎnr, kěshì gōngzuò xiàolū yě bǐjiāo gāo a. "Duō lāo duō dé" shì shēhuǐzhūnyǐde jīngjí zhèngcè ma?
A: "Duō lāo duō dé"! Zhèige zhèngcè bù cū?
B: Ò, duì le, nǐ bie wàngle, jīntiān wǎngshang wǒmen zài fàdiànli yǒu yīge wānghū! Wānhuǐ? Duìbùqǐ, wǒ bù jíde le.
B: Zúòtiān gěi nǐ sèngqude qīngtiě. Nǐ wàng le?
A: Ò, duì le, shì huǎnsōnghū!
B: Shì, shì Zhōngguó Lǎxíngshè bāndé. Shì huǎnsōng, yě shì huānyíng.
A: Huānyíng?
B: Huānyíng nǐmen zài lái ya!
A: Dāngrán, wǒmen yǐdīng huǐ zài lái.
B: Nǐ qiānwwán bié wàngle. Wǎnshāng qǐdiǎn bàn!
A: Hǎo, wǒ yǐdīng lái!
B: Wǒ yě zèmě xiǎng.
A: Wǒ hǎi yǒu yīge wèntí, zāi jīng-ji tèqū lǐ gōngzuò dé gōngréng, gōng- zǐ shì bu shì gāo yìdiǎnr ne?
B: Wǒ xiǎng gāo yìdiǎnr.
A: Èr bù shì huǐ chūxiàn yīge xīn de jījī ma?
B: Méi nàme yánzhòng!
A: Wèishénme?
B: Yībāndé lái shuō, yǒu wàiguó gōngsī cānjiādě gōngzhāng, suīrán gōngzǐ gāo yìdiǎnr, kěshì gōngzuò xiàolū yě bǐjiāo gāo a. "Duō lāo duō dé" shì shēhuǐzhūnyǐde jīngjí zhèngcè ma?
A: "Duō lāo duō dé"! Zhèige zhèngcè bù cū?
B: Ò, duì le, nǐ bie wàngle, jīntiān wǎngshang wǒmen zài fàdiànli yǒu yīge wānghū! Wānhuǐ? Duìbùqǐ, wǒ bù jíde le.
B: Zúòtiān gěi nǐ sèngqude qīngtiě. Nǐ wàng le?
A: Ò, duì le, shì huǎnsōnghū!
B: Shì, shì Zhōngguó Lǎxíngshè bāndé. Shì huǎnsōng, yě shì huānyíng.
A: Huānyíng?
B: Huānyíng nǐmen zài lái ya!
A: Dāngrán, wǒmen yǐdīng huǐ zài lái.
B: Nǐ qiānwwán bié wàngle. Wǎnshāng qǐdiǎn bàn!
A: Hǎo, wǒ yǐdīng lái!
TVL, Unit 8.

Unit 8, Tape 2 Workbook

Exercise 1

This exercise is a review of the Reference List sentences in this unit. The speaker will say a sentence in English, followed by a pause for you to translate it into Chinese. Then a second speaker will confirm your answer.

All sentences from the Reference List will occur only once. You may want to rewind the tape and practice this exercise several times.

Exercise 2

In this exercise, an American reporter talks with the director of the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair at a press conference.

The conversation occurs only once. After listening to it completely, you'll probably want to rewind the tape and answer the questions below as you listen a second time.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

-jiè session
wàishāng foreign businessman
yāoqǐ ŭ request, demand
jiànyì suggestion, proposal
pínɡzi bottle
rēnɡ to throw away
bāozhuānɡ packaging

Questions for Exercise 2

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What is the American reporter's suggestion? What two reasons does he give?

2. Have the Chinese been able to follow this suggestion? Why?

3. How does the reporter suggest the Chinese might raise their bottling efficiency?
After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the dialogue again to help you practice saying your answers.

Note: The translations used in these dialogues are meant to indicate the English functional equivalents for the Chinese sentences rather than the literal meaning of the Chinese.

**Exercise 3**

In this conversation, an American reporter talks to a leading cadre from an industrial commercial organization.

Listen to the conversation once straight through. Then, on the second time through, look below and answer the questions.

Here are the new words and phrases you will need to understand this conversation:

- zīcóng: ever since
- cuòwù: to be mistaken, to be wrong
- zhījiān: between
- wàishāng: foreign businessman
- fāngxiàng: direction
- chángqì: long term

**Questions for Exercise 3**

Prepare your answers to these questions in Chinese so that you will be able to give them orally in class.

1. What interesting things does the American say have come about in special economic zones like Fúzhōu? How does he think the situation might develop?

2. What does the Chinese say was one mistake of the Cultural Revolution?

3. What does he say is the relationship between socialism and the policy of "more pay for more work"?

4. What does he ask the American to tell his friends about China's direction?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation to help you practice saying the answers which you have prepared.
Exercise 4

This exercise is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair.

Listen to the conversation straight through once. Then rewind the tape and listen again. On the second time through, answer the questions.

You will need the following new words and phrases:

bǎi zhuōzi to set a table
wāishāng foreign businessman
zhībĕn capital
bāozhèng to assure, to guarantee
kĕn to be willing

Questions for Exercise 4

1. Who is being given a send-off?
2. Why does the woman say Chiňa needs lawyers?
3. Why is the farewell meeting not going to be an ordinary one?
4. What kind of work do these two workers do at the Trade Fair?

After you have answered these questions yourself, you may want to take a look at the translation for this conversation. You may also want to listen to the conversation again to help you pronounce your answers correctly.
Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 2

At a press conference in the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair, an American reporter (A) talks with the director of the Trade Fair (B).

B: Gèwèi hái yǒu shénme wèntí ma? Do you have any more questions?

A: Yěwú yègè běn xiǎode wèntí, wǒ xiāng zhuījīn jījiē jījiēyīhuí kānqīlái dōu gādē hěn bù cuò, wǎnqiǎo shǎngqīn hěn shāo yǒu kōngshǒu hǔqūe, būguō yǒu xī qǐnxīng nǐmén nèng bù nèng gādē kuài yǐdiǎnr ne? One small question. The last few trade fairs have all looked very successful. Foreign businessmen have rarely gone home empty-handed. But couldn't you change certain things a little faster?

B: Dāngrán, wāishāngmen tíchūlái yāoqū wǒmén zǒngshì yào kāolì. Of course, we always consider suggestions from foreign businessmen.

B: Dāngrán, wāishāngmen tíchúlái yāoqū wǒmén zǒngshì yào kāolì. Of course, we always consider suggestions from foreign businessmen. Bān Guǎngjīnshǒu de mǔdí jiǔ shì yào fānróng jīnchūkǒu ma!

A: Wǒ zhī yǒu yīge jiānyí. Nǐmén de pǐjū píngzǐ kě bù kuài gāi xiǎo yǐdiǎnr ne? Wǒmén hěn xīhuān Zhōngguó chūkùde pǐjū, kěshì hěn bù xīhuān nèixí xiāng jiāngyěpǐng yīyàngdē dà píngzǐ. Yījīnlái bù fāngbiān. Èrqī xiāngqǐliú, Xīngqītiān wǒmén xīhuān chūqù lǚxíng, xiāo pǐng pǐjū hēwán jiǔ réng duōmē fāngbiān. I just have one suggestion. Could you make your beer bottles smaller? We like the beer that China exports, but we don't like those big bottles that look like soy sauce bottles. They're difficult to ship. Besides, on weekends we like to go out on trips. It's so convenient to have small bottles which you can throw out when you're finished.

B: Xièxiē ni. Zhēngjīng jiānyí tíde hěn hào. Shàngqī xīhuānggāng mǎoyí dàibiǎoqù nǐ zhělǐde shǐhou yījīng tíchúlái le. Dāihuì wǒmén jiù kěyī qǐng gèwèi kān yǐxiār wǒmén de xiǎo pǐng pǐjū, bù guǒ zhězhēng pǐjū mǔqīn hǎi bù nèng dē guīmò shǎngxīn, wǒmén shèbei hǎi yǒu hěn duō xiānzhǐ. Thank you. That's a very good suggestion. It was already made by a trade delegation from Hong Kong when they came here. Later, we can show you our smaller-bottle beer, but at present this kind of beer cannot yet be produced on a large scale. Our equipment still has many limitations.

A: Yěrú zǎi zhēnshāngmíng wǒmén Méiguó gǒngéi kěyī hé Zhōngguó fángmíng hězù, tígāo bāozhuǎn de xiāolū. Perhaps some of our American companies might be able to cooperate with China in this area and raise your bottling efficiency.

B: Zhēngjīng wèntí bǐjīng fúzá, wǒmén dǎi yānjiǔ yănjiǔ, wǒ xiāngbàng bù jiǔ, wǒmén jiù kěyī gěi nǐ yīge mǎnyǐde huífā. This is a rather complicated question which we will have to look into. I hope that we will be able to give you a satisfactory answer before long.

A: Xièxiē ni. Thank you.

228
Any more questions?

No.

All right, then we'll end the press conference here. I'd like to thank all of you friends from the press for your help and suggestions, and thank all of you.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 3

An American reporter (A) and a leading cadre (B) from an industrial commercial organization talk.

A: Lìù Xiǎnshèng, nín hǎo, hǎo jiǔ bù jiàn.

Hello, Mr. Lìù, I haven't seen you in a long time.

B: Hǎo jiǔ bù jiàn. Hěn mánɡ ba?

Yes, it's been a long time. Have you been busy?

A: Méiyǒu nèi mánɡ, jiǔ shí lèi yǐdiǎnr.

Not so busy, I'm just tired.

B: Zuìjìn nǐ dào nǎr qù le?

Where have you been to again lately?

A: Fùjiàn. Fūzhōu fūjīn yǒu yíge hěn dà de jīngji tèqū, wǒ zài nàr zhùlè jītiān, juédé hěn yǒu yǐsī.

Fūjiàn. Near Fūzhōu there's a very large special economic zone where I stayed a few days. I found it very interesting.

B: Shí a. Zhícōnɡ hě nǐmen dǐngde mǎiyǔn tiáoyuē yǐhòu, jīge dà hǎi- gǎng dōu shǐ yuè ěr yuè fānróng le.

Yes. Ever since we concluded the sea transport treaty with you, our big ports have been getting more and more prosperous.

A: Bù jìu shí zhēnxiē, Fūzhōu hǎi chūxínlè yǐxiē hěn yǒu yǐsìde shì.

Not only that, but some very interesting things have come about in Fūzhōu.

B: NY shuōshuō kān ne?

What's that?

A: Zài jīngji tèqū gōngzuò de Zhōngguó gōngcè, tāmén shǒu yī bījiāo duō, tāmén bījiāo róngyì mǎidào zhīliàng bījiāo hāode xiāofēipín. Nǐn xiǎng zěnmeyuàn? Zài jīngji tèqū huì bù hui chūxínlè xīndé jiē-jí, zài zhēngzhīshāng huì bù hui chūxínlè xīndé qīngkuāng?

Chinese workers who live in special economic zones have larger incomes, and it's easier for them to get higher quality consumer goods. What do you think: Will a new class appear in the special economic zones? Will a new political situation develop?
TVL, Unit 8

B: Nǐ qiānwàn bù yào nàme xiǎng. Qiánxiē nián, wǒmen zhǐ gāo zhèng- zhì bù gāo jǐngjì shì cuòwùde. Erqǐ zhǐ gāo zhèngzhì, zhèngzhì yě méiyǒu gǎnhào ma!

A: Nàme, nǐ xiǎng zhèige qǐngkuǎng hé shèhùzhìyìde gōngzǐ zhèngcè zhīlián bù hū yǒu shènmé dà wéntí le?


A: Hǎojíle, xièxiè nǐn.

B: Bù kěqí, qǐng nǐ gāosu nǐde péngyoumen, dà gāo Sīgē Xīándāihuà shì wǒmén de fāngxiǎng, fānróng jǐngjì shì zhèige dà fāngxiāngde yīfùfèn, shì wǒmén chángqūde zhèngcè, bù hū suífān yíle, qǐng gěi wǒmen yīfùfèn fāngxíng.

A: Hǎo, wǒ yìdīng zhǔnghào tamen.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

This is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair.

A: Dàqǐnglìdà zhǔwǔ dōu bāihǎo le mèiyǒu?

B: Bāihǎo le. Jǐntiān yǒu shì huānshēng shèi xiǎo yà?

A: Huānshēng yíge Xiānggāng lái de lǚshī dàbǐxiǎotuán.

B: Nǐ xiǎng zhèige qǐngkuǎng hé shèhùzhìyìde gōngzǐ zhèngcè zhīlián bù hū yǒu shènmé dà wéntí le?

A: Hǎojíle, xièxiè nǐn.

B: Bù kěqí, qǐng nǐ gāosu nǐde péngyoumen, dà gāo Sīgē Xīándāihuà shì wǒmén de fāngxiǎng, fānróng jǐngjì shì zhèige dà fāngxiāngde yīfùfèn, shì wǒmén chángqūde zhèngcè, bù hū suífān yíle, qǐng gěi wǒmen yīfùfèn fāngxíng.

A: Hǎo, wǒ yìdīng zhǔnghào tamen.

This is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair.

A: Dàqǐnglìdà zhǔwǔ dōu bāihǎo le mèiyǒu?

B: Nǐ xiǎng zhèige qǐngkuǎng hé shèhùzhìyìde gōngzǐ zhèngcè zhīlián bù hū yǒu shènmé dà wéntí le?

A: Hǎojíle, xièxiè nǐn.

B: Bù kěqí, qǐng nǐ gāosu nǐde péngyoumen, dà gāo Sīgē Xīándāihuà shì wǒmén de fāngxiǎng, fānróng jǐngjì shì zhèige dà fāngxiāngde yīfùfèn, shì wǒmén chángqūde zhèngcè, bù hū suífān yíle, qǐng gěi wǒmen yīfùfèn fāngxíng.

A: Hǎo, wǒ yìdīng zhǔnghào tamen.

Dialogue and Translation for Exercise 4

This is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair.

A: Dàqǐnglìdà zhǔwǔ dōu bāihǎo le mèiyǒu?

B: Nǐ xiǎng zhèige qǐngkuǎng hé shèhùzhìyìde gōngzǐ zhèngcè zhīlián bù hū yǒu shènmé dà wéntí le?

A: Hǎojíle, xièxiè nǐn.

B: Bù kěqí, qǐng nǐ gāosu nǐde péngyoumen, dà gāo Sīgē Xīándāihuà shì wǒmén de fāngxiǎng, fānróng jǐngjì shì zhèige dà fāngxiāngde yīfùfèn, shì wǒmén chángqūde zhèngcè, bù hū suífān yíle, qǐng gěi wǒmen yīfùfèn fāngxíng.

A: Hǎo, wǒ yìdīng zhǔnghào tamen.

This is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair.

A: Dàqǐnglìdà zhǔwǔ dōu bāihǎo le mèiyǒu?

B: Nǐ xiǎng zhèige qǐngkuǎng hé shèhùzhìyìde gōngzǐ zhèngcè zhīlián bù hū yǒu shènmé dà wéntí le?

A: Hǎojíle, xièxiè nǐn.

B: Bù kěqí, qǐng nǐ gāosu nǐde péngyoumen, dà gāo Sīgē Xīándāihuà shì wǒmén de fāngxiǎng, fānróng jǐngjì shì zhèige dà fāngxiāngde yīfùfèn, shì wǒmén chángqūde zhèngcè, bù hū suífān yíle, qǐng gěi wǒmen yīfùfèn fāngxíng.

A: Hǎo, wǒ yìdīng zhǔnghào tamen.

This is a conversation between two employees at the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair.

A: Dàqǐnglìdà zhǔwǔ dōu bāihǎo le mèiyǒu?

B: Nǐ xiǎng zhèige qǐngkuǎng hé shèhùzhìyìde gōngzǐ zhèngcè zhīlián bù hū yǒu shènmé dà wéntí le?

A: Hǎojíle, xièxiè nǐn.
TVL, Unit 8

B: Lǎoshī! Fēilǐ gōngzuòzhe gèn Guǎngjīāohuì yǒu shènme guānxi?

A: Xiànzài Zhōngguó hé wàishāng hézuò yuè lái yuè duō le. Zhōngguó yào jǐnjīng shènbèi, yào gāo jiānggōng gōngyè, huòshì yào gāo bǐ- de jǐngjí hézuò, dōu xǔyào fālǐ a!

B: Wǒ háishì juédé yǒu yìdìnr qǐ- guài, bù zhènme qǐngchu, wǒ cónglái méi xiǎngdào fālǐ hé jǐngjí hái yǒu guānxi.

A: Wǎiguó shāngren ma, jiàqian na, zībèn na, shēnmède, dōu yào yòng fālǐ xiǎoqíngchude, yàobùrán, tāmen zhènme zhídāo bǎzhèng kěyì zhuǎn qían ne? Bù kěyì zhuǎn qían, tā- men wàishānméi yào hé wǒmen zuò mǎimai ne?

B: À! Mín zhèi yī shuō wǒ jiù qǐng- chu le. Yǒu lǐ fālǐ bǎzhèng, wài- shāng cāi kěn zuò mǎimai.

A: Hēi le, zài qù kànkan, wānhuí- shàng xùyáo de dōngxi dōu yào jí- zhòng fāngzhàode.

B: Hǎo, jíde le.

A: Hǎi yǒu, nǐ tīngdào xiǎoxi le méiyǒu?

B: Méiyǒu a, shènme xiǎoxi?

A: Jīntiān wàishāngdè huānsònghuì bù tāi píngcháng.

B: Zěnme bù píngcháng ne?

A: Guǎngdōng shěng, Guǎngzhōu shì gějǐ rénmín zhèngfǔ dōu yào pài hěn zhōngyào de rèn lái. Yǒu hěn duō hěn zhōngyào shì yào zài zhèr tān, wǒmen děi bā shènme dōu

Lawyers? What connection do legal workers have with the Guǎngzhōu Trade Fair?

China is cooperating more and more with foreign merchants. If China wants to import equipment, to do processing or finishing of products, or have any other economic cooperation, they need lawyers!

I still think that's kind of strange. I don't really understand. I never thought that law had anything to do with economics.

Foreign merchants, you know. They have to write out clearly their prices and capital in legal terms, otherwise how can they know for sure that they are guaranteed to make money? And if they can't make any money, why would they want to do business with us?

Oh! When you put it that way, I understand. Foreign merchants are only willing to do business if they have legal guarantees.

Okay, go back and take a look. The things we'll need during the banquet should all be put together in one place.

All right, I won't forget.

And another thing: Have you heard the news?

No, what news?

Tonight's farewell meeting isn't going to be an ordinary one.

How's that?

All levels of the people's government of Guǎngdōng province and the city of Guǎngzhōu are sending very important people. They'll be talking about a lot of important things here.
We should prepare everything well and put the leadership at ease.

That won't be any problem. I'll go back and check once more. But later you have to go look things over once yourself!

Okay, I'll be right there.
APPENDIX:

WORD USAGE EXERCISES
TVL, Unit 1

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose between cānguān, fāngwén and kàn in translating these sentences.

1. What places did you visit when you went to China?
2. I don't even have time to visit my friends.
3. This is not a formal (zhēngshì) visit. Don't be nervous (jīnzhāng).

II. shǎoshǔ, hěn shǎo

1. There are very few people who will not help others.
2. Only a small number of students make (chū) that kind of mistake.

III. Choose between direction names with -fāng, -bù, and -biān (for example, běifāng, běibù, and běibiān).

1. Northerners like to eat foods made from wheat (miánshí), and Southerners like to eat rice (mǐfàn).
2. There are several famous universities in the eastern United States.
3. Hángzhōu is southwest of Shànghāi.
4. New York is in the northeast.
5. Inner Mongolia is west of Manchuria.
6. People from northern Taiwan have a different accent from southerners.

IV. dōng, liǎojiē, zhīdào, tíngshuō, tíngdōng

1. If you understood that I wasn't going to come, why did you still stand there waiting for two hours?
2. I could understand everything he said, although he spoke with a very heavy (zhòng) accent (kǒuyìnhūn).
3. Such a weird (guài) guy is really impossible to understand.
4. I understand you're going to school this summer. Is that true?
5. I can understand the Shànghāi dialect, but I can't speak it very well.

V. gāo, nòng, zuò

1. Doing these sentences drives me crazy ("gives one a headache").
2. It was very difficult to do scientific experimentation (kēxué shíyàn) under such circumstances.
3. What are you doing there, you naughty child!
TVL, Unit 2

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose -zhōng, -lèi, or -yàng to translate these sentences:

1. How could you think that he was that kind of person?
2. She'll eat any kind of food.
3. What breed of dog (gǒu) is this?
4. We should research these questions by category.

II. mùqiǎn, xiànzáì, zhēihuí

1. Where is he now?
2. At present the international situation (guójì xíngshì) is complicated.
3. I'm leaving right now.
4. It is now 9:26 Bēijīng time.

III. nǚlì, yōnggōng, shì ("to try")

1. Try doing it this way. If it doesn't work, we'll see what we can do about it later.
2. All the students here are hardworking.
3. China is hard at work on modernization, and we want to help.
4. I tried his office three times today, but no one answered the phone.

IV. pǔbiàn, pǔtōng, píngcháng, liúxīng

1. That's a popular saying.
2. In Shanghai, for men and women to hold hands (shǒu lǎ shǒu) is a very common thing.
3. How much does an ordinary worker here make a month?
4. Frisbees (fēipán) are now very common in Bēijīng.

V. wánquán, quán, zhēnggè

1. The room was filled with smoke (yān).
2. His idea (xiǎngfǎ) was completely wrong.
3. I'm afraid he completely misunderstood what I meant.
4. The whole article was about how bad their planning had been.
5. His whole family came.
VI. qūbié, chābié, bù yíyàng
1. There aren't many differences between the big cities of the northeastern United States and those of Western Europe (Xi'ān).
2. I could hardly tell the difference between the twins (zhèduì shuāngbāotāi).
3. Would you explain the difference between these two terms (míngcī)?

VII. rènwéi, yīwéi, xiāng, juéde
1. He thought that it was an hour earlier than it really (shíjīshāng) was.
2. I think the best way to study a foreign language (wài yǔ) is to live in the country where it is spoken.
3. What do you think of Béijīng?
4. Why do you consider him such a dangerous person?
5. A: Has he already gone back?
   B: I think so, but I'm not sure.

VIII. shǒuxiān, xiān, diyī
1. First I stayed in a small town (xiǎozhèn) for a month and then came here.
2. In his office, he is always the first to arrive.
3. You have to first get the pronunciation right in order to get the spelling (pīnxìè) right.

IX. tiáojiàn, qíngkuàng
1. Why don't you apply yourself to your studies? You have such excellent conditions.
2. He can't stand (shǒubuliào) the situation any longer.
3. Under the circumstances, he had no choice but to agree.
4. How are business conditions in China these days?
5. Conditions have changed greatly in rural China in the past thirty years.
6. Working conditions there are better now than the last time I visited.
TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose miànji, dîqū, -dài, -qū, -bû, or bûfen in translating these sentences.

1. This area is very dirty.
2. This area of the city isn't safe.
3. The area of this room is nine square meters (jiū pîngfâng mî).
4. In the northeastern area of China, there is a lot of industry.
5. This kind of rice is produced in the Jiāngnán area.
6. The southwestern part of the United States has a very distinctive natural environment.
7. I don't get the chance to come to this part of town very often.
8. This kind of architecture is very popular in these parts.

II. dâozî, mî, fàn

1. His father grows rice.
2. This is fried rice, not plain ("white") rice.
3. This rice is grown (chûchăn) only in Guăngdōng.

III. fâzhăn, zhâng

1. Your rice is growing pretty well!
2. China's economy has grown slowly during the past two decades.
3. The kids are growing so fast.
4. Our company has grown quickly.
5. Over the past one hundred years, Shàntóu has grown into an important industrial city.

IV. jiā, jiâtíng, jiâ(lî)rén, -hû

1. There are no boys in their family.
2. Xiăo Píng's whole family went to the seashore on Sunday.
3. Such a family is rare (bû châng jiăn) in America.
4. Thirty years ago there were only twenty-odd families in this town (xiăozhên).
5. Next Saturday I'm going up to Bèijíng to see my family.
6. Almost every family has a television in our country. Some families have more than one.
TVL, Unit 3

V. jīgli, jīxiè

1. Our country's machine industry is still young.
2. The application (yíngyòng) of large machines started three hundred years ago.
3. Agricultural machinery is badly needed in China.
4. Shall I take you to see our new machinery now?

VI. -kǒu, -ge, -wēi

1. Will the seven of us fit (in the car)?
2. Those three professors all graduated from Harvard (Hāfō).
3. How many people are there in your family?
4. (When entering a restaurant for dinner)
   Headwaiter: How many?
   You: Four.

VII. pīngjūn, yībān

1. The average height (gāodù) of the students in this class is about 1.6 meters (yīmǐ lìù).
2. The average person can eat fifteen to twenty-five jiāozī.
3. On an average day, I can write five pages (yè).

VIII. rén, rénmín, rénmen, rénjia

1. The people would surely not like to keep (bǎoliú) such a thing in the constitution (xǐānfā).
2. There isn't much difference between the two brothers (in personality).
3. Friendship involves at least two people.
4. I've heard people say that they're going to build (gài) a hotel at that intersection.
5. People naturally prefer to live in a quiet place rather than in the busy downtown area (nàoshì, "busy downtown area").
6. People are people; she's no different from anyone else.

IX. tūpiàn, zhàopiàn, huà(r)

1. I think that picture is of her mother, but it must have been taken many years ago.
2. Where did you get so many pictures of China?
3. The picture that old man (lǎotōuzi) is drawing is really ugly!
TVL, Unit 4

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose gài, xiū, jiànhù, or jiànshé in translating these sentences:

1. This highway was three years in construction. (It took three years to finish building this highway.)
2. Are those workers building new dormitories?
3. Is this how you intend to build a powerful country?!
4. Many city walls (chéng qiáng) built in ancient times were destroyed (huíle) during wars.
5. No one may build in this district.
6. How long did it take to build this bridge (zhēizuò qiáo)?

II. ké, zhēn, yídīng, dāngrán, shì ("to be," emphatic)

1. He is going to go, but he hasn't decided when yet.
2. When you tell him, he's sure to be happy.
3. That sure was an interesting movie.
4. He sure has a lot of friends!
5. Drugs (dúpíng)—that's certainly not something to mess with.
6. A: Can you tell me why your government didn't send anyone to take part?
   B: Sure I can tell you. It's like this: . . .
7. A: Would he know the answer (dá'àn) to this question?
   B: I'm sure he would.
8. They want to concentrate on only a portion of the work; that just won't do!

III. In each sentence, "how old" requires a different translation.

1. How old is this building?
2. How old are you? (to a young person)
3. How old is your boy?
4. How old is your grandfather?
5. How old is China?
6. How old is this movie?
7. How old are these shoes of yours?
8. How old are these magazines?
9. How old is this chicken soup? (How long since it was made?)
10. How old is this bean curd? (How long since it was bought?)
IV. gǔ, gǔdài

1. That's an ancient building.
2. Man already knew how to cook in ancient times.
3. He likes to study (dū) the ancient books.
4. Xī'ān is an ancient city.

V. chūānguò, jīngguò, guò, guògu

1. Ten years have passed, and she's still just as young and pretty (as before).
2. Cross the street and wait for me in front of that building.
3. I pass there every day on my way to work (shàng bānde shíhou).
4. Time passes so quickly!
5. The train passed several stations without stopping.
6. When I'm in a hurry, I cut through the park.
7. After a month had passed, he felt much better.
8. Through the efforts of many people, we have been able to set up (kāibān) an elementary school here.
TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. bāng, bāngzhù, bāngmáng

1. Would you help me?
2. I don't need this kind of help.
3. He came to help.
4. Would you hold this for me for a second?
5. I'll help you write the report (bāogào).
6. We can help each other.

II. gè-, mèi-, yī- ("one")

1. Each person has his own ideas. How can he make you do it this way?
2. Each year we have many excellent students.
3. Each state has some laws of its own.
4. These apples are a dime each.
5. Each book he writes is better than the last.

III. guān, guānxīn, jièyī

1. Although she says little, she actually (shíjíshāng) cares deeply.
2. If you don't mind, I'd like to ask you a few questions.
3. People didn't care a bit about those pitiful (kěliánđe) children.
4. Who cares what you do?!
5. Don't mind him!

IV. qítā, bìéde, lìng(wài), yī-, nèi-

1. These sentences are pretty good; the others are too colloquial (tǔ).
2. Well, you can say he's right about this point, but how about the other questions?
3. One is too weak, the other is too fat (pàng).
4. When you're taking the test, don't think about other things.
5. This vase is not bad, but the other one is even prettier.
6. Do you want to know the other reasons?
7. Put your other hand here.
TVL, Unit 5

V. -wéi, dìwéi

1. I don't like to talk with those who are in high positions.
2. India's rice (dàmi) output is the highest ("first") in the world.
3. He's too young to be in such a high position.

VI. bù fāngxīn, dānxīn

1. I'm very worried about him. He doesn't look well.
2. Without you here I've been sort of anxious.
3. What is there to worry about?
4. I would really worry if you went alone.
5. Don't worry. She's already grown up; she can take care of herself.
TVL, Unit 6

TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. gōngchǎng, chǎng

1. The air is really bad because there are so many factories in this area.
2. She'd never been so happy since she came to ("entered") this factory.
3. He works in a camera factory.

II. měi, hǎokàn, piàoliàng

1. She's really a beautiful girl.
2. What a beautiful place this is!
3. This dress doesn't look good at all. Why do you want to buy it?
4. You speak beautiful standard Chinese!
5. What a handsome son you have, Department Chief Xú.
6. The weather is beautiful today.

III. chà, bù hǎo, huái

1. His pronunciation is too bad.
2. He doesn't speak French well.
3. His Japanese isn't bad.
4. On the whole, it's a pretty nice place; it's just that the weather is always bad.
5. Bad boy ("child")!
6. Conditions here used to be very bad; now they're much better.
7. That commune's level of mechanization is rather poor.

IV. liǎojiē, zhīdào, rènshì, shóu (shū)

1. I didn't know him when we were at Oxford (Niújīn).
2. Do you know what happened between them (tāmen zhījiān)?
3. I know nothing about that.
4. You still don't know me too well, do you?
5. I knew him, but not very well. We had only met a couple of times.
6. I know of him, but I've never met him.
7. I still don't know Běijīng very well; perhaps we should go together.
8. (To taxi driver) I want to go to the Dàhuá Restaurant. Do you know it?
9. Of the three of us, you know him best. Do you think he would mind if we did this?
TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose háishi... or zuì hǎo in translating these sentences.

1. We'd better not go after all. See, it's raining.
2. You'd better walk there. It's very hard to drive on that road.
3. It's best to be mentally prepared ("in the heart have preparation").
4. I'd better not drink too much. I have to drive.
5. It would be best if I could talk with him in person. Would that be possible?
6. Chinese food is still the tastiest, don't you think?

II. jiāshū, jiā, jiā(lí)rén

1. This housing is for workers and their families.
2. How many people are there in the average worker's family?
3. Is your whole family in Huangzhuang?
4. They go home every Saturday to be with their families.

III. kuài (yào), yào, huì, gāng yào, zhèng yào, jiù yào, hěn kuài jiù

1. Be patient. We'll be there soon.
2. He's going to get his Ph.D. (bóshì xuéwèi) this summer.
3. You've come at the perfect time. I'm just about to pack the suitcases.
4. She'll be happy if you do that.
5. Look, it's about to rain.
6. It's going to rain today.
7. That's what I was just about to say, (but) you didn't give me the chance to say it.
8. She forgot about the matter very soon.
9. Three new consulates (lǐngshíguǎn) are going to open very soon.
10. I'm about to die of hunger!
11. Don't worry. I'll tell him.
12. It's almost over (finished).
13. If you don't stay in touch ("maintain contact") with them, they forget you very soon.
14. He came when I was just about to leave.
IV. yánzhe, pángbiān

1. They've planted a lot of trees alongside the river.
2. Alongside the street, I saw many new stores.
3. They built a railroad alongside the border.
4. Just walk along this street, and you'll see a lot of clothing stores.
5. There is a park alongside the factory.

V. yīshàng, shàngmian, -duō OR yīxiá, xiàmian, bù dào

1. There are probably over ten people there.
2. He has under twenty students.
3. Children ten and over may participate:
4. It will cost over fifty dollars.
5. We had been going for less than an hour when the car broke down.
6. Only buildings with over four stories have elevators.
7. Under this brigade there are ten production teams.
8. It's been over a month since I saw him last.
9. His office is right above mine.
TRANSLATION EXERCISE

I. Choose dāihuír, dēng yíxià, dēng (yī)huír, yíhòu, or hòulái in translating these sentences:

1. I'll be leaving in a minute.
2. Later, when you have time, let's talk, okay?
4. Later, I found out that she had been a Red Guard.
5. Things were very chaotic at that time, but later on they got better.
6. His later short stories are mostly about the Uygurs.
7. He'll be here in a while.

II. fānróng, fādá

1. The Táng dynasty was a period (shíqī) when China's culture flourished.
2. I didn't expect that this place would have become so prosperous in the ten years since I left.
3. Livestock farming is well developed in Xinjiang and Inner Mongolia.
4. Japan's industry and commerce are flourishing and the economy is thriving.

III. qiānwàn, yídīng

1. Be sure to bring that book.
2. Be sure not to forget to ask him whether he is coming.
3. I'll be sure to tell him.

IV. xiāoxi, xīnwén

1. Where did you hear this news?
2. There isn't any interesting news in today's paper.
3. Is there any news about China?
4. She often brought us unpleasant (bù yúkuáide) news.
5. Has there been any news about when the meeting will be held?
6. What good news is there today?
7. News reporters (jízhē) are the best at getting information.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>âi</td>
<td>to love</td>
<td>âi</td>
<td>love story</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âiqíng gúshí</td>
<td>love story</td>
<td>âiʻqíng gúshí</td>
<td>to fall in love with</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âisháng</td>
<td>to fall in love with</td>
<td>âiʻsháng</td>
<td>according to</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âlùbó</td>
<td>Arab, Arabic</td>
<td>âlùbó</td>
<td>shore, bank, coast</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ân</td>
<td>according to</td>
<td>ân</td>
<td>to be peaceful and stable, to be quiet and settled</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ândíng</td>
<td>to be peaceful and stable, to be quiet and settled</td>
<td>ândíng</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânpái</td>
<td>to arrange</td>
<td>ânpái</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ânshí</td>
<td>on time</td>
<td>ânshí</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Module &amp; Unit</strong></td>
<td><strong>Module &amp; Unit</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ba</td>
<td>(marker of pause, hypothesis)</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bàba</td>
<td>father, dad, papa</td>
<td>bàba</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bâdálìng (Bàdálìng)</td>
<td>(area northwest of Běijíng)</td>
<td>Bâdálìng (Bâdálìng)</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâifěn zhī X</td>
<td>X percent</td>
<td>bâi fěn zhī X</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâitiān</td>
<td>daytime</td>
<td>bâitiān</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâi zhuōzi</td>
<td>to set a table</td>
<td>bâi zhuōzi</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bān</td>
<td>(counter for class of students)</td>
<td>-bān</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâng</td>
<td>to help; as a help to, for (someone)</td>
<td>bâng</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.4, 7.7, 8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bâng máng</td>
<td>to help; help</td>
<td>bâng máng</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bângzhú</td>
<td>to help; help; as a help to, for</td>
<td>bângzhú</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāo</td>
<td>to wrap</td>
<td>bāo</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāochī</td>
<td>to keep, to preserve, to maintain</td>
<td>bāo chī</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāchū</td>
<td>to protect</td>
<td>bāchū</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāozhēng</td>
<td>to guarantee, to assure</td>
<td>bāo zhēng</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāozhùzhāng</td>
<td>to package; packaging</td>
<td>bāo zhúzhāng</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bèi</td>
<td>time, -fold</td>
<td>-bèi</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bèi</td>
<td>(passive marker)</td>
<td>bèi</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Běidà</td>
<td>Běijíng University</td>
<td>Běi dà</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běifāng</td>
<td>the north</td>
<td>běi fāng</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běihòu</td>
<td>behind someone's back</td>
<td>běi hòu</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bèizi</td>
<td>lifetime</td>
<td>-bèi zi</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běndì</td>
<td>this locality, local</td>
<td>běn dì</td>
<td></td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běnlái</td>
<td>originally, in the beginning, at first; to begin with, in the first place</td>
<td>běn lái</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>běnrén</td>
<td>herself, himself, oneself, myself, etc.</td>
<td>běn rén</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bǐ</td>
<td>to compare</td>
<td>bǐ</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biān</td>
<td>to change, to become different</td>
<td>biān</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biānchéng</td>
<td>to change into</td>
<td>biānchéng</td>
<td></td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TVL Vocabulary</td>
<td>Module &amp; Unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biànhuà</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biànhjiang</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biànhjing</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bộ</td>
<td>7.5*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bộ (biểc)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bingren</td>
<td>7.3*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bömû</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bộshì</td>
<td>7.2*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bộ (counter for films; counter for automobiles, machines, etc.)</td>
<td>8.1*, 8.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu fángxin</td>
<td>7.3*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bùfen</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu guăn</td>
<td>7.5*, 7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu huâng bu màng</td>
<td>7.8*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu jiàn bu sàn</td>
<td>7.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu jiândân</td>
<td>7.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu nêng bu</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu shāo</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu shi...jiù shi...</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu shi tiânde jiù shi</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lâde</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bu xiăng huâa</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cái</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cái</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cáichān</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎidì</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎiliâo</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎiguàn</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎnjiâa</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cǎnkuâoshū</td>
<td>8.2*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>châ</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>châbiâe</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>châng</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>châng</td>
<td>8.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>châng</td>
<td>8.5*, 8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>châng gã</td>
<td>7.6*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Module &amp; Unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cháng Jiāng</td>
<td>Yangtze River</td>
<td>8.1&quot;, 8.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chángqí</td>
<td>long term</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎnliàng</td>
<td>output, yield</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cháo</td>
<td>dynasty (bound form)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chāo</td>
<td>to be noisy; to disturb by making noise</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cháodài</td>
<td>dynasty</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǎoxǐng</td>
<td>to wake (someone) up by being noisy</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-chēng</td>
<td>(verb ending) into</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chénggōng</td>
<td>to succeed</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chēnghu</td>
<td>to call, to address</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chénglì</td>
<td>to establish, to found, to set up</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chéngshì</td>
<td>city; urban</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chéngyuánguó</td>
<td>member country</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chēxiāng</td>
<td>car (of a train)</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chībuxiāqǔ</td>
<td>to be unable to eat</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chǐ kǔ</td>
<td>to suffer, to undergo hardship</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chóngxīn</td>
<td>again, anew, afresh</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chōu yān</td>
<td>to smoke (tobacco)</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chū</td>
<td>to produce</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...chū</td>
<td>at the beginning of...</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuāng</td>
<td>bed</td>
<td>7.2&quot;, 7.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuāngkǒu</td>
<td>window (e.g., ticket window)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuàngguō</td>
<td>to cross through</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chuántōng</td>
<td>tradition, traditional</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chū chāi</td>
<td>to go or be away on (official) business</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chū guó</td>
<td>to go abroad</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chū jīng</td>
<td>to leave a country</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūkǒu</td>
<td>to export</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūnjì</td>
<td>the spring season</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūxiān</td>
<td>to appear, to arise, to emerge</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chūhuì</td>
<td>vocabulary</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cóngláí</td>
<td>ever (up till now), always (up till now)</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cóngláí bù/méi</td>
<td>never (up till now)</td>
<td>7.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cóng...(Verb)-qǐ</td>
<td>to begin (Verb)-ing from...</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cúnkuǎn</td>
<td>savings</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cūn</td>
<td>village</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cuòwù</td>
<td>to be wrong (incorrect); mistake</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàbúfen</td>
<td>the greater part; for the most part, mostly</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàduì</td>
<td>(production) brigade</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàdūshāhù(r)</td>
<td>the great majority</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dài</td>
<td>generation; era, (historical) period</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dài</td>
<td>zone, area, belt</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàibiǎo</td>
<td>to represent; representative, delegate; on behalf of, in the name of</td>
<td>8.4&quot;, 8.7&quot;, 3.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TVL Vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎibiǎo tuánn</td>
<td>delegation, mission</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāi huǐr</td>
<td>in a while, later (Běijīng)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāishàng</td>
<td>to take along (Běijīng)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎjiě</td>
<td>&quot;older sister&quot; (a respectful term of address for a woman about one's own age or older)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dàyí</td>
<td>(a city in Yùnnán province)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dālù</td>
<td>mainland, continent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāng</td>
<td>to act as, to be</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dāng (political) party</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānrèn</td>
<td>to take up, to assume (a job or post)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānxīn</td>
<td>to be worried, to be uneasy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dānzi</td>
<td>list; form</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dào</td>
<td>to pour; to dump</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dào</td>
<td>(resultative ending used for perception by one of the senses: jiāngdào, kàn dào, tīng dào, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dào</td>
<td>(resultative ending used to indicate reaching: xiàng dào, tǎndào, etc., often translated as &quot;about&quot; or &quot;of&quot;)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dào</td>
<td>yet, on the contrary, nevertheless</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàochū</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàodé</td>
<td>morality, morals, ethics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàoli</td>
<td>principle, truth, hows and whys; reason, argument, sense</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàoyǒu</td>
<td>(tour) guide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàozī</td>
<td>rice (in the paddy, or after harvesting but before hulling); paddy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dàqīng</td>
<td>(a city in Heilongjīng Province)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàkǎo</td>
<td>to disturb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà shīfù</td>
<td>chef</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàtīng</td>
<td>(large) hall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dàtóng</td>
<td>(a city in Shànxi province)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxué bǐyěshēng</td>
<td>college graduate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàxuéshēng</td>
<td>college student</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎ zhǎng</td>
<td>to fight a war, to go to war</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎ zhēn</td>
<td>to get an injection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎ zǐ</td>
<td>to type (on a typewriter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǎzīrán</td>
<td>nature (the physical world)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dé</td>
<td>to get</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dědāo</td>
<td>to receive, to get</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-de huà</td>
<td>if; in case; supposing that</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>děi kǎn</td>
<td>to depend on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēng</td>
<td>when; by the time; till</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēng dāo</td>
<td>wait until; when, by the time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēng yíxià</td>
<td>wait a minute; in a little while</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēngyú</td>
<td>to equal, to be equal to; to be the same as (in effect), to amount to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dǐ</td>
<td>earth, soil; land; ground; fields</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-diǎn</td>
<td>point</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diāo yānlèi</td>
<td>to cry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Module &amp; Unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dìng</td>
<td>to agree on; to draw up (a plan); to conclude (a treaty)</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dìqū</td>
<td>area, district, region</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dìwei</td>
<td>position, status</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dìxīng</td>
<td>topography, terrain</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dōng</td>
<td>(counter for buildings)</td>
<td>8.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dēngběi</td>
<td>Manchuria</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōngbū</td>
<td>the eastern part of a country</td>
<td>3.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dōngde</td>
<td>to understand, to grasp, to know</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duànpíān</td>
<td>short (stories, articles)</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúlǐ</td>
<td>to be independent; independence</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō (duō)</td>
<td>how (to what extent)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-duō</td>
<td>(counter for flowers)</td>
<td>8.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō hǎo!</td>
<td>how great that is!</td>
<td>7.2*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duō lèo duō dé</td>
<td>more pay for more work</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duōshǔ(r)</td>
<td>the majority (of), most (of)</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ìi</td>
<td>say! (interjection telling that the speaker just thought of something)</td>
<td>7.3*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>értōng</td>
<td>child (formal word)</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>érxīfū(r) (-fer)</td>
<td>daughter-in-law</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fādá</td>
<td>to be (highly) developed, to be flourishing, to be prosperous</td>
<td>7.2*, 7.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fālǜ</td>
<td>law</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fān</td>
<td>to translate</td>
<td>7.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fān</td>
<td>to violate, to offend, to commit; to have an attack (of an old disease)</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānnduō</td>
<td>to oppose, to be against</td>
<td>7.1*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāngbèi</td>
<td>to take precautions against</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāng jià</td>
<td>to have vacation; to let out for vacation</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fāngmǐăn (-mian)</td>
<td>aspect, side, area, respect</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāngwén</td>
<td>to visit and meet with</td>
<td>7.6*, 8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāngxīng</td>
<td>direction</td>
<td>8.8*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāng xīn</td>
<td>to be unworried, to be at ease</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāngyán</td>
<td>dialect</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāngzhī gōngyè</td>
<td>textile industry</td>
<td>8.5*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānróng</td>
<td>to be flourishing/prosperous/booming; to make (something) prosper</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fānzhèng</td>
<td>anyway, in any case</td>
<td>7.3*, 8.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fān zuì</td>
<td>to commit a crime</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāshēng</td>
<td>to happen, to occur</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāxiàn</td>
<td>to discover, to find out; discovery</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāzhǎn</td>
<td>to develop, to expand, to grow</td>
<td>7.5*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēn</td>
<td>points</td>
<td>7.5*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Module &amp; Unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fān</td>
<td>to divide, to separate, to split; to be divided into (parts, categories)</td>
<td>7.6, 8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fān</td>
<td>(counter for portions of food)</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāngsu</td>
<td>customs</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēnzhāi</td>
<td>to separate, to split up</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fū</td>
<td>to spend, to expend</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fūjiān</td>
<td>(a province in south China)</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fùnū</td>
<td>woman; women, woman-kind</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fúqì</td>
<td>blessings, good fortune</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūzā (fūzá)</td>
<td>to be complicated, to be complex</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gài</td>
<td>will probably</td>
<td>7.4*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāi</td>
<td>should, ought to</td>
<td>7.4*, 7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāi</td>
<td>to build (buildings); to cover</td>
<td>7.4*, 8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāibiàn</td>
<td>to change; change(s)</td>
<td>7.1*, 7.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāishàn</td>
<td>to improve</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāitiān</td>
<td>another day</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gānjué</td>
<td>cadre</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gāngtì</td>
<td>iron and steel</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gānjué</td>
<td>feeling, sensation; to feel, to perceive</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎnmǎ</td>
<td>to do what; (colloquial) why on earth, what for</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎnshāng(lái)</td>
<td>to catch up</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎn shenme</td>
<td>to do what; (colloquial) why on earth, what for</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gěnxiè</td>
<td>to be thankful, to be grateful (for)</td>
<td>7.3*, 8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎo</td>
<td>to do/carry on/engage in/work in (a field or endeavor)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎocù</td>
<td>to do wrong; to be mistaken</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎosuàn</td>
<td>senior cadres</td>
<td>7.6*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎohāo</td>
<td>to do a good job of, to handle well</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎoshāngqù</td>
<td>to cause to go up, to cause to move forward</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gǎozhōng</td>
<td>senior high school</td>
<td>7.2, 7.1*, 7.5*, 8.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gè-</td>
<td>each, every, various, different</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gèguó</td>
<td>various countries</td>
<td>7.1*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gélúnghuà Dàxué</td>
<td>Columbia University</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gěnghūng</td>
<td>revolution; revolutionary; to revolt</td>
<td>7.8*, 8.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gān</td>
<td>to follow</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gěnzhe</td>
<td>along with, in the wake of</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōng</td>
<td>male (for animals)</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gōngchǎndǎng</td>
<td>Communist Party</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngchāng</td>
<td>factory, mill, plant, works</td>
<td>7.6*, 8.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngchēngshī</td>
<td>engineer</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngdiàn</td>
<td>palace</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōnggōng</td>
<td>grandfather, grandpa (paternal)</td>
<td>7.4*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngkē</td>
<td>homework</td>
<td>7.7*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Module &amp; Unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōnglù</td>
<td>gōnglù</td>
<td>highway</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gōngqíngtuán</td>
<td>gōngqíngtuán</td>
<td>Communist Youth League</td>
<td>7.6*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngren</td>
<td>gōngren</td>
<td>worker</td>
<td>8.3* , 8.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngshāngyè</td>
<td>gōngshāngyè</td>
<td>industry and commerce</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngshè</td>
<td>gōngshè</td>
<td>commune</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngyè</td>
<td>gōngyè</td>
<td>industry</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngyīpǐn</td>
<td>gōngyīpǐn</td>
<td>handicrafts</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngyuán</td>
<td>gōngyuán</td>
<td>the common era; A.D.</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngyuán qián</td>
<td>gōngyuánqián</td>
<td>B.C.</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngzǐ</td>
<td>gōngzǐ</td>
<td>wages, pay</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōngzuōzhě</td>
<td>gōngzuōzhě</td>
<td>worker (in a particular field)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gū-</td>
<td>gū-</td>
<td>ancient (used in compound words)</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guān</td>
<td>guān</td>
<td>to take care of; to mind, to bother about</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guāngchāng</td>
<td>guāngchāng</td>
<td>(public) square</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guāngdōng</td>
<td>guāngdōng</td>
<td>(province in south China)</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guānggāo</td>
<td>guānggāo</td>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guāngjīzhōu</td>
<td>guāngjīzhōu</td>
<td>Guāngzhōu (Canton) Trade Fair</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guāngxi</td>
<td>guāngxi</td>
<td>(a province in so. China)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guān (X) jiāo (Y)</td>
<td>guān (X) jiāo (Y)</td>
<td>to call (X) (Y)</td>
<td>8.3*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guānxiān</td>
<td>guānxiān</td>
<td>concept, idea, notion</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guānxīn</td>
<td>guānxīn</td>
<td>to be concerned/care about</td>
<td>7.1* , 8.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guānyú</td>
<td>guānyú</td>
<td>as to, with regard to, concerning, about</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guójì</td>
<td>guójì</td>
<td>ancient times, antiquity; ancient</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guójìshǐ</td>
<td>guójìshǐ</td>
<td>ancient history</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guōgōng (Bówūyuàn)</td>
<td>guōgōng (Bówūyuàn)</td>
<td>Former Imperial Palace (Museum)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gūnhuǐ</td>
<td>gūnhuǐ</td>
<td>bone ashes, ashes (of a person)</td>
<td>7.5*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guīju</td>
<td>guīju</td>
<td>rules of proper behavior, social</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>etiquette, manners; special custom, established practice, rule (of a community or organization)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guífún</td>
<td>guífún</td>
<td>(a city in Guāngxi Province)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guīněi</td>
<td>guīněi</td>
<td>scale, scope, dimensions</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guīzhōu</td>
<td>guīzhōu</td>
<td>(a province of China)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guójiā</td>
<td>guójiā</td>
<td>country, state, nation; national</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guómín jīngjī</td>
<td>guómín jīngjī</td>
<td>national economy</td>
<td>9.5*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǒqū</td>
<td>guǒqū</td>
<td>the past</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǒqu</td>
<td>guǒqu</td>
<td>to pass; to pass away, to die</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guǒ rìzi</td>
<td>guǒ rìzi</td>
<td>to live; to get along</td>
<td>7.4*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guóyǔ</td>
<td>guóyǔ</td>
<td>the national language (Taiwan)</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guóshí</td>
<td>guóshí</td>
<td>story</td>
<td>7.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guóshípǐn(r)</td>
<td>guóshípǐn(r)</td>
<td>feature film</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guóshū</td>
<td>guóshū</td>
<td>ancient book</td>
<td>7.1*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hái</td>
<td>hái</td>
<td>fairly, passably</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hăigǎng</td>
<td>hăigǎng</td>
<td>harbor, seaport</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hăiliùyīn</td>
<td>hăiliùyīn</td>
<td>heroin</td>
<td>7.7*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>háishi</td>
<td>háishi</td>
<td>it would be better to</td>
<td>8.4* , 8.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TVL Vocabulary

hǎi wān
bay; gulf
8.5

hǎi yùn
sea transportation
8.8

hán shòu bān
correspondence courses
8.6

Hányǔ
the Chinese language
8.6

hǎochù
benefit, advantage
7.5

hǎohāo (hǎohāo)
properly, carefully, thoroughly
7.1; 7.8

...hǎo le
(used when agreeing, suggesting, or permitting); (used when giving in to something)
8.1

hǎo shì hǎo, kěshì...
well, okay, but...
7.3

hǎoxìăng
to seem as if, to seem like
7.8

hào zhāo (hào zhāo)
to appeal to/to call on (people to engage in an activity)
8.7

Hǎilóngrónjīăng
(a province in northeast China)
8.5

hèiyè
(darkness of) night, nighttime
7.3

hèn
to hate, to detest; to feel bitter toward
7.6

hěnpíng
peace; peacefully
8.6

hēxíß
to write together, to coauthor
8.8

hēzuò
to cooperate; cooperation
8.8

Hóngguǒbīng
(a) Red Guard; the Red Guards
7.6

hūluăi
later, afterwards
7.2; 7.5

-hù
household, family
8.3

huā
to spend, to expend
8.5

-huá
-ize, -ify
8.3

Huáběi
north of China
8.1

huàcè
book of photographs
8.4

Huánán
south of China
8.1

huàngdì
emperor
6.6

Huáng Bēi
the Yellow River
8.3

Huángshān
(a mountain in Anhui Province)
8.1

huángtū gāoyuán
loess plateau
8.6

Huángzhōu
(name of a commune)
8.7

huānsìng
to see off, to send off
8.8

huānsìng huì
farewell/send-off meeting or party
8.8

Huáshèngdùn Yóubào
Washington Post
7.7

huàxiăn
synthetic fiber
8.5

-huí
(counter for shì, "matter")
7.8

huí
might; to be likely to; will
7.1

huìhùά
conversation
8.2

huìtōu(r) jiăn
see you later (in a little while)
8.1

huò
to live; to become alive; to survive; to be live/alive/living; mobile, moving
7.5

huòdòng
activity
8.2

huòtū sànmíngzhǐ
ham sandwich
8.1

hūshùā
(to talk nonsense; nonsense, drivel
7.2

hūxiăng
mutually
7.4
TCL Vocabulary

-ji
level, rank, grade, stage, degree 8.8

ji
to be crowded 8.4

jí
to remember; to commit to memory 7.5

-jiá (counter for families) 7.4

-jià (suffix indicating a professional or
specialist in some activity) 8.3

jiāgōng
to process; to finish (a product) 8.8

jiākuài
to speed up 8.2

jiānhēng abbreviation 8.2*

jiāndàn
to be simple 7.7

jiāng
to stress, to pay attention to, to
be particular about 7.3

jiāng
prize 7.5*

jiāng jià (qian)
to bargain, to haggle 8.8*

jiāngjiù
to be particular about; to be
elegant, to be tasteful 7.3*

jiāngnán the area south of the the lover
reaches of the Yangtze River 8.3*, 8.7*

jiāngsū (a coastal province of China) 8.5*

jiànlì
to establish, to found 8.5*

jiānshè
to build up, to construct; construc-
tion, reconstruction 8.3

jiànyī to suggest; suggestion, proposal 8.8*

jiànzhù (-zhú, -zhu)
to build, to construct; structure;
architecture 8.4

jiāo
to hand over, to give 8.6

-jiāo
religion, church (bound form) 8.6

jiāokēshū
textbook 8.2*

jiāolíu
to exchange; exchange, interchange 8.6

jiāoqū
suburbs, outskirts 8.3

jiāoshī
teacher, instructor 8.2

jiāotáng
church, cathedral 7.7*, 8.4

jiāotōng
traffic; transportation 8.6

jiāoyu
trade fair 8.8

jiāoyu
to educate; education 7.7

jiāqian
price 8.8

jiārù
to join 7.6

jiāshǐ
family members, (family) 8.7
dependents

jiātíng family 7.3

jiāběn
basic, fundamental, elementary 8.2

jiāběn
basically, on the whole, by
and large 8.2

jiādòng
to be agitated, to be worked up 7.1*

jiè

to borrow; to lend 7.1

-jiè
session 8.6*

jiēdào
to successfully borrow 7.1

jiēfàng
to liberate, to emancipate; liberation
jiēfàng, jūn (People's) Liberation Army, PLA 8.6

jiēhūn (jiēhūn)
to get married 7.2

jiējì (social) class 8.8
### TVL Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Character(s)</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jiēshòu</td>
<td>to accept</td>
<td>8.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiēyī</td>
<td>to mind, to take offense</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiějǐngmǐng</td>
<td>in a hurry, extremely rushed</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jiěmáng</td>
<td>to be hasty, to be hurried</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīn</td>
<td>to be tight</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīn...</td>
<td>the past... the last...</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnbù</td>
<td>to progress; progress</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnbūkǒu</td>
<td>import-export</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīndàishǐ</td>
<td>modern history</td>
<td>7.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐngguó</td>
<td>to go through, to pass through; as a result of, after, through; course (of events), what has happened</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐngji tèqū</td>
<td>special economic zone (SEZ)</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐngshèn</td>
<td>energy, spirits</td>
<td>7.3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐngxīdào</td>
<td>(a kind of rice plant)</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnǐng</td>
<td>(a city in Inner Mongolia)</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnkǒu</td>
<td>to import</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnr</td>
<td>today (Běijīng)</td>
<td>7.8*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jīnshǔ</td>
<td>metal</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐnxǐng</td>
<td>to carry on, to conduct, to proceed</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐnxīng</td>
<td>to be nervous, to be tense</td>
<td>7.3* , 8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐqì (jǐqì)</td>
<td>machine, machinery, apparatus</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐshū</td>
<td>technique, skill; technology; technical</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jù ná Sīchuān lái shū</td>
<td>take Sichuan for example</td>
<td>8.5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jùshǐ...yě...</td>
<td>even (if)...</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐxiē (jǐjiē)</td>
<td>machine; machinery; mechanical</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐxiěhuà</td>
<td>to mechanize; mechanization</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐzhě</td>
<td>reporter, journalist</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐzhōng</td>
<td>to concentrate; to centralize; to put together</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐzhù</td>
<td>to remember</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jù</td>
<td>sentence; (counter for sentences or utterances, often followed by huà, &quot;speech&quot;)</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juédìng</td>
<td>to decide; decision</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jū gé lǐzǐ</td>
<td>give an example</td>
<td>8.3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jǐndūf</td>
<td>army</td>
<td>7.8*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūzǐ shū(y)</td>
<td>orange juice (Běijīng)</td>
<td>7.1*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(V V) kàn  try and (V), (V) and see how it is  7.7
kàn  to depend on  7.8
kànbuqǐ  to look down on, to scorn, to despise  7.4
kǎndào  to see  7.3
kǎnzhe  (followed by a verb) as one sees fit, as one deems reasonable  7.8
kāo  to take/give an exam, test, or quiz  7.8
to depend on, to rely on; to lean against; to be next to/against/by  7.2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kāolū</td>
<td>to consider, to think about; consideration</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāoshuàng</td>
<td>to be admitted (to a school or organization by passing an entrance exam)</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāoshì</td>
<td>to take/give an exam, test, or quiz; exam, test</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kē</td>
<td>(counter for trees)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kē</td>
<td>indeed, certainly, really</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēāi</td>
<td>to be loveable/adorable/cute</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēī</td>
<td>science and technology</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēkāyín</td>
<td>cocaine</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kēkōkēle</td>
<td>Coca Cola</td>
<td>7.1, 7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēlían</td>
<td>to be pitiful</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēn</td>
<td>to be willing to</td>
<td>7.7, 8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēněng</td>
<td>to be possible</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kēnxué</td>
<td>science; to be scientific</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōng</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōngshū</td>
<td>empty-handed</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kōu</td>
<td>(counter for people considered as making up a family)</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōuyín</td>
<td>accent</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kū</td>
<td>to cry</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuāi yāo</td>
<td>will soon</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kuāngqū</td>
<td>mining region</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kūnnan</td>
<td>difficulty</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lǎdīng zǐmǔ</td>
<td>Latin (Roman) alphabet</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...lái</td>
<td>for the past...(amount of time)</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lái</td>
<td>(used before a verb to express that something will be done)</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lái</td>
<td>to do (something), to perform (something), to have (an event), to help oneself (to food, etc.), to join in (a game, etc.)</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...lái shūō</td>
<td>...speaking</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lájī</td>
<td>garbage</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làngrèi</td>
<td>to waste</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lànvéiyán</td>
<td>appendicitis</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lào</td>
<td>all the time, always</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làodōng</td>
<td>to labor</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làodōnglī</td>
<td>labor force, labor; able-bodied person</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láolao</td>
<td>grandmother, grandma (maternal)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>láolī</td>
<td>labor force; labor</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lào shīfu</td>
<td>old master</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làoshū (lāoshū)</td>
<td>mouse or rat</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làoxiānsheng</td>
<td>old gentlemen</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>làoyé</td>
<td>grandfather, grandpa (maternal)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TVL Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lǐzōng</td>
<td>(used with surname as an affectionate term for a high-ranking PLA commander)</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lèi</td>
<td>category</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lǐ</td>
<td>li, a unit of length (1/2 km.)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liǎn</td>
<td>(Beijing colloquial word meaning liǎngge, &quot;two&quot;)</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lián...dōu/yě...</td>
<td>even...</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liàng</td>
<td>to be bright, to be light; to be shiny</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liǎngshí</td>
<td>grain, cereals</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liánxì</td>
<td>to contact, to get in touch with; connection, ties</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liáodài</td>
<td>the Liáo Period</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liǎojiě</td>
<td>to understand/grasp/comprehend; to find out/acquaint oneself with</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liáo tiàn(r)</td>
<td>to chat</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lí jìng</td>
<td>to leave a country or place</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>líliàng (líliàng)</td>
<td>power; force; strength</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐmào</td>
<td>manners, politeness</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>língdào</td>
<td>to lead, to direct, to exercise leadership (over); leadership; leader, leading cadre</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>língwài</td>
<td>other</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>líushi niàndài</td>
<td>the decade of the sixties</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>líxià</td>
<td>to leave</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>líxìng</td>
<td>to be common, to be popular, to be prevalent</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>líxuéshēng</td>
<td>study-abroad students</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>líwù</td>
<td>gift</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luàn</td>
<td>to be in disorder, to be in a mess, to be chaotic; arbitrarily, recklessly, any old way</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luǎnbībāzāo</td>
<td>in a mess, in confusion, in disorder; miscellaneous, motley, all thrown in together</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lǐ Xùn</td>
<td>(a famous Chinese author of the 1920s and 1930s)</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǐshì</td>
<td>lawyer, attorney</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lǚxīngtuán</td>
<td>tour group</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>(marker for obviousness of reasoning)</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma</td>
<td>(marker for insistent sentences)</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mānmān (mānmān)</td>
<td>slowly; gradually, by and by; taking one's time (doing something); (tell) all about, in all details</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mānyǐ</td>
<td>to be pleased, to be satisfied</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māiyì</td>
<td>trade</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>me (ma)</td>
<td>(pause marker)</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>měi</td>
<td>to be beautiful</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Translation</td>
<td>Module &amp; Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méitān</td>
<td>coal</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méi yìsī</td>
<td>to be uninteresting/boring; to be pointless/meaningless; to be a drag;</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to be without value, not worthy of respect, cheap</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mén</td>
<td>(counter for courses)</td>
<td>8.7*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miànji</td>
<td>(surface) area</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Míng</td>
<td>(name of a dynasty, 1368-1644)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mínghài</td>
<td>to understand, to be clear on, to comprehend; to be clear, to be</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>intelligible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Míng Bào</td>
<td>Ming Pao (a Hong Kong newspaper)</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>míngci</td>
<td>word, term, expression</td>
<td>8.3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mínzú</td>
<td>nationality, a people, nation (ethnic group)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mínzú zhíjiān</td>
<td>between nationalities</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mǔ</td>
<td>female (for animals)</td>
<td>7.2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mǔ</td>
<td>mǔ (a unit of area)</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mǔchān</td>
<td>per-mu yield</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Münxhāi</td>
<td>Munich</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mùqián</td>
<td>the present; at present</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mùtōu</td>
<td>wood</td>
<td>8.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà hǎi yōng shuō</td>
<td>that goes without saying</td>
<td>7.2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎnínai</td>
<td>grandmother (paternal)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǎkǎi</td>
<td>to take away, to move (something) out of the way</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nànrāng</td>
<td>the bridegroom's side</td>
<td>7.5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nànrāng</td>
<td>the south</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nán Měi</td>
<td>South America</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nànnǚ</td>
<td>men and women, male-female</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nànshōu</td>
<td>to be uncomfortable; to feel bad, to feel unhappy</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nántīng</td>
<td>to be unpleasant to hear; to sound bad, to offend the ears; to be</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scandalous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne</td>
<td>(used in questions asking the whereabouts of someone/something)</td>
<td>7.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne</td>
<td>(indicating lack of completion/absence of change)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...ne</td>
<td>as for...</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nèidī</td>
<td>interior region (of a country)</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nèimēng(gǔ)</td>
<td>Inner Mongolia, Nei Mongol (an autonomous region of China)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǔnglǐ</td>
<td>ability</td>
<td>7.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niándài</td>
<td>decade of a century; period, era</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niánjī (-jì)</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niánlíng (-líng)</td>
<td>age</td>
<td>8.2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>niánqīng</td>
<td>to be young</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinyin</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Module &amp; Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǐ hái shì lǎoyángzi</td>
<td>you look as if you haven’t changed a bit</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nílóng</td>
<td>nylon</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nòng</td>
<td>to do; to fool with; to get</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nóngchāng</td>
<td>farm</td>
<td>8.3, 8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nòngcūn</td>
<td>country, rural area; rural</td>
<td>7.5, 7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nòngái</td>
<td>to get and bring</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nòngmín</td>
<td>peasant</td>
<td>7.5, 8.3, 8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nòngyè</td>
<td>agriculture</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nòngyèqū</td>
<td>farming region</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǔlì</td>
<td>to make great efforts, to try hard, to exert oneself</td>
<td>7.7, 8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nǔshēng</td>
<td>coed, woman student</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōuzhōu</td>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pà</td>
<td>to be afraid</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǎolài pǎoqù</td>
<td>to run back and forth</td>
<td>7.6, 8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>péngdào</td>
<td>to hit; to run into, to come across</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-piān</td>
<td>(counter for sheets, articles or pieces of writing)</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piān</td>
<td>to fool, to deceive</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piānzì</td>
<td>film, movie</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐchá bǐng</td>
<td>pizza</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐng</td>
<td>to be flat, to be level</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐngdǎng</td>
<td>equality; to be equal (of people)</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐngfāng gōnglǐ</td>
<td>square kilometer</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐngjūn</td>
<td>(on the) average</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐngjūnshǔ</td>
<td>an average number, a mean</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐngyuán</td>
<td>plain, flatlands</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐngzǐ</td>
<td>bottle</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐnmíng</td>
<td>with all one’s might, for all one is worth, desperately, like mad; to risk one’s life, to defy death</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐnzhōng</td>
<td>variety</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǐzhùn</td>
<td>to give permission, to approve; approval, permission, sanction</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pópo</td>
<td>gra dmother, grandma</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǔbiàn</td>
<td>to be universal, to be general, to be widespread, to be common</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǔtōng</td>
<td>to be common/regular/ordinary</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pǔtōnghuà</td>
<td>the common (standard) speech, Standard Chinese</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Module &amp; Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiang</td>
<td>gun</td>
<td>7.7*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiang</td>
<td>to be strong</td>
<td>7.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiangguo</td>
<td>powerful nation, a (world) power</td>
<td>8.5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qianjindao</td>
<td>Thousand-Catty Rice</td>
<td>8.3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qianmen</td>
<td>(a gate in Beijing)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qianwian</td>
<td>under any circumstances; by no means; without fail, be sure to</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qianxie nian</td>
<td>a few years back, in recent years</td>
<td>7.8*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiaomn</td>
<td>to knock at the door</td>
<td>7.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiguai</td>
<td>to be strange, to be odd, to be surprising</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qilai</td>
<td>to get up (in several senses)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-qilai</td>
<td>(resultative ending which indicates starting)</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qyma</td>
<td>at least; minimum, lowest, rudimentary, elementary</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qin</td>
<td>(name of a dynasty, 221-207 B.C.)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qing</td>
<td>to be light</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qingchu (-chu)</td>
<td>to be clear, to be distinct</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qinggongye</td>
<td>light industry</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qinghai</td>
<td>(a province in western China)</td>
<td>7.3* 8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qingjiiao</td>
<td>green pepper</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qingkuang</td>
<td>situation, circumstances, condition, state of affairs</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qingxing</td>
<td>situation, circumstances, condition, state of affairs</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qingzhensi</td>
<td>mosque</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qinlue</td>
<td>to invade; invasion, aggression</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qing</td>
<td>to be poor</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qita</td>
<td>other, else; the rest</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qiju</td>
<td>the fall season</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-)qu</td>
<td>area, region, district</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quan</td>
<td>entirely, completely; whole, entire; to be complete</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quan</td>
<td>to advise, to urge, to try to persuade</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quanbù</td>
<td>entire, whole, all</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quanguo</td>
<td>the whole country</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quanjia ren</td>
<td>the whole family</td>
<td>7.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qubie</td>
<td>difference, distinction</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rang</td>
<td>to make (someone a certain way)</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rang nǐ jiǔ děng le</td>
<td>I've kept you waiting</td>
<td>8.5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ren</td>
<td>person; self; body</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rang</td>
<td>to throw, to throw away</td>
<td>8.8*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>renjia</td>
<td>people; other people; someone else; they; he, she; I</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remin</td>
<td>the people</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remin gongshe</td>
<td>people's commune</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TVL Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rènwéi</td>
<td>to think/believe/consider (that)</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rényuán</td>
<td>personnel, staff</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>réxīn</td>
<td>to be enthusiastic and interested; to be warmhearted</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxīnqīlai</td>
<td>to become enthusiastic and interested</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rìzi</td>
<td>day; date; time</td>
<td>7.3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rù</td>
<td>to enter; to join (an organization)</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruō</td>
<td>to be weak</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rù Tuán</td>
<td>to join the Communist Youth League</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **sàn bù**  
  to go for a stroll  
  to kill (means unspecified); to kill  
  (specifically, with a knife or knife-like instrument); to try to kill  
  to be stupid, to be dumb, to be silly, to be naive  
  sofa  
  desert  
  mountainous region, hilly area (geographical term)  
  (a verb ending indicating starting and continuing)  
  businessman, businesswoman  
  to go to school; to attend school  
  commerce, business  
  hilly country, mountainous region  
  (province in north central China)  
  minority; a minority of, a small number of, few  
  minority nationality, national minority  
  Young Pioneers  
  equipment; facilities; installation  
  society; social  
  social sciences  
  province  
  to produce; production  
  production brigade  
  production team  
  to live; life; daily life; livelihood  
  business, trade  
  to apply (for)  
  body; health  
  (a border stop in Guǎngdōng, formerly spelled Shumchun)  
  commune member
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Meaning (followed by a verb), to make, to enable</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shǐ</td>
<td>to cause</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shí</td>
<td>city, municipality</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐchāng</td>
<td>market</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shì Dà Jiànzhu</td>
<td>the Ten Great Structures (in Běijīng)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐjìè</td>
<td>world</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐjièshāng</td>
<td>in the world, in the whole world</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐjièxīng</td>
<td>worldwide</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shǐsānlìng</td>
<td>the Ming Tombs</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐtāng</td>
<td>mess hall, dining room</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐxiān</td>
<td>to realize/achieve/bring about/accomplish/come true</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐxǐng</td>
<td>to practice, to carry out, to put into effect, to implement (a method, policy, plan, reform, etc.)</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐyóu</td>
<td>petroleum, oil</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐzài</td>
<td>really; to be real</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǐzhèngfū</td>
<td>city hall</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shōu</td>
<td>to harvest</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shòu</td>
<td>to receive</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shòu</td>
<td>to be thin</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǒuchāode</td>
<td>handwritten</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǒudū</td>
<td>capital</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǒu jiàoyu</td>
<td>to receive an education</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǒurú</td>
<td>income, earnings</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǒushi</td>
<td>to straighten up; to get one's things ready</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǒuxiān</td>
<td>first; first of all, in the first place</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǒu xiānzhī</td>
<td>to be restricted</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǔ</td>
<td>tree</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǔcāi</td>
<td>vegetable</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǔpíng</td>
<td>level, standard</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǔjìè</td>
<td>summer vacation</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shǔliāng</td>
<td>quantity, amount, number</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... (lǐ) shuō</td>
<td>...speaking</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōbùqīngchù</td>
<td>can't explain clearly</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōdào</td>
<td>to speak of; as for</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōfǎ</td>
<td>way of saying a thing; statement, version, argument</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shuōshì</td>
<td>Master's degree</td>
<td>7.2, 7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐ</td>
<td>to die</td>
<td>7.3, 7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sìchuān</td>
<td>(province in central China)</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sìge Xiàndàihuā</td>
<td>the Four Modernizations (of agriculture, industry, national defense, and science and technology)</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sìjī</td>
<td>four seasons</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sìjì cháng yīn</td>
<td>green all year round</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sì Jì Qīng</td>
<td>(a commune in Běijīng suburbs)</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sì Shū</td>
<td>the Four Books (Dàxué, Zhòngyōng, Lúnyǐ, Mēngzǐ)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sǐxiāng</td>
<td>thought, way of thinking, ideas</td>
<td>7.5, 8.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TVL Vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sòngbúqu</td>
<td>to take/escort back</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sòngxíng</td>
<td>to see (someone off), to wish (someone) a good trip; to give a going-away party</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suàn</td>
<td>to be considered, to count as, can be regarded as</td>
<td>8.2, 8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suàn le</td>
<td>forget it, let's drop the matter, let it go at that; come off it, come on</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūdù</td>
<td>speed, pace</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sū-Háng</td>
<td>Sūzhōu and Hángzhōu (abbreviation)</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sūlián</td>
<td>Soviet Union</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūnúñǔ</td>
<td>granddaughter (through one's son)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sūnzi</td>
<td>grandson (through one's son)</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suyúde...dōu</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sùshè</td>
<td>living quarters; dormitory</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tái</td>
<td>(counter for machines)</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāiyang</td>
<td>sun</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tán</td>
<td>to talk about (used with the object shēngyì, máoyì, etc., in the sense of 'to negotiate')</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tán liàn'ài</td>
<td>to be in love, to be going together (courtship)</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāolùn</td>
<td>to discuss; discussion</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāoyàn</td>
<td>to dislike, to be disgusted with</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tèdìàn</td>
<td>distinctive trait, characteristic</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>téng</td>
<td>to be very fond of, to be attached to, to dote on</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tí</td>
<td>to carry (from the hand at the side of the body); to lift/raise; to mention/bring up; to put forward/propose; to ask (questions)</td>
<td>7.8, 8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiān'ànmén</td>
<td>the Gate of Heavenly Peace</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiānjīn (Tiānjīng)</td>
<td>a municipality and port in northeast China</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiān liàng</td>
<td>daybreak, dawn; to become light out</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiān Tán</td>
<td>the Temple of Heaven</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiāo</td>
<td>to jump, to leap</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiāojiàn</td>
<td>condition(s), circumstances</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiāoyù</td>
<td>treaty</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiáoxí</td>
<td>a brief, informal note</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīchū</td>
<td>to raise/put forward/propose</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīchulài</td>
<td>to bring up</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīlù</td>
<td>railroad</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīgāc</td>
<td>to raise, to improve</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tímu (-mù)</td>
<td>topic, subject; title; exam question, test problem</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tīng</td>
<td>to heed (advice), to obey (orders)</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TVL Vocabulary

tīngdechū  to be able to distinguish by listening  8.1 *
tóngjū  to cohabit; cohabitation  7.2
tóngyì  to consent, to agree  7.5
tóngyì  to become united; to unite, to unify; unification  8.6

tōur  head, chief, boss  7.7 *
-tuán  group of people, society (bound form)  7.6, 8.1
Tuán  the (Communist Youth) League  7.6
tūdī  land  7.4
Tūrqi  Turkey  8.6 *
tū  to push  8.7 *
tuōlājf  tractor  8.3
tóngpiān  picture, photograph  8.3
Tz!  Tsk (clicking sound with several different uses: disappointment, admiration, hesitation, etc.)  8.6

wàigōng  grandfather, grandpa (maternal)  7.4 *
wàihuì  foreign exchange  8.7
wàipó  grandmother, grandma (maternal)  7.4 *
wàishāng  foreign businessman  8.8 *
wàiwén  foreign language  7.5
wánhuì  evening party; evening of entertainment  7.6 *, 8.8
wānlǐān wānhūn  late involvement and late marriage  7.2
Wānlǐ Chángchēng  the Great Wall of Ten Thousand Lǐ  8.4
-wēi  place, position  8.5
wéidā  to be great (e.g., a leader)  8.4 *
wèile  in order to; for the purpose of; for the sake of  7.5
Wéiwúehr  the Uyghur (Uighur) nationality  8.6
WénGē  the Cultural Revolution  8.2
wénhuà  culture; schooling, education, literacy  7.1
Wénhuà (Dà) Gěmǐng  the Cultural Revolution  8.2 *
wénxuéjiā  writer, literary man  7.6 *
wénzhāng  article, essay; prose style  7.2
wénzi  writing, script, written language  8.6
wōde tiān na!  my God!  7.1 *
Wǔduō Jīnhuā  Five Golden Flowers (a film)  8.1 *
wǔjiāo  noontime nap  7.8
Wǔfū  (a city in Jiāngsū province)  8.7 *

xī  department (of a school)  8.2 *
-xiā  under  7.6
xiāndài  modern, contemporary; modern times  7.1 *, 8.2
xiāndàihuà  to become modernized; modernization; modern(ized), sophisticated  8.2
xiǎng  to sound, to make a sound  7.4 *
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xiàng</td>
<td>to be like, to resemble; like;</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngbūchū</td>
<td>can't think up, can't come up with</td>
<td>7.2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngdāng</td>
<td>quite, pretty, considerably</td>
<td>7.2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngdào</td>
<td>to think of</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngxīn</td>
<td>to believe (in); to trust, to be certain, to be convinced (that)</td>
<td>7.7, 8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiāngzhe</td>
<td>to be thinking of, to have on one's mind</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiānjīn</td>
<td>to be advanced</td>
<td>8.3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiānzhì</td>
<td>to restrict, to limit; restriction, limitation</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo</td>
<td>young</td>
<td>7.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo diǎn(r) shēng(r)</td>
<td>a little more quietly</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎofèi</td>
<td>to consume</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎofēipǐn</td>
<td>consumer goods</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎofēizhǐ</td>
<td>consumer</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎolǔ</td>
<td>efficiency</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎomiè</td>
<td>to exterminate/eliminate/wipe out/ stamp out</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎo péngyou</td>
<td>little friend; kids</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎosūn</td>
<td>to be filial; filial obedience</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎoshū(r)</td>
<td>fiction, novel</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xiǎoxi</td>
<td>news</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xià qí</td>
<td>to play chess</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-xiáqu</td>
<td>(resultative ending which indicates continuing an action) down (directional ending used for eating or drinking down)</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-xiáqu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xīběi</td>
<td>the Northwest</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xī dú</td>
<td>to take drugs; drug taking</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xīfāng</td>
<td>the West</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xíguàn</td>
<td>habit, custom, usual practice; to be accustomed to, to be used to</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīn</td>
<td>heart; mind</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīng</td>
<td>nature, -ness, -ity</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīngkuì</td>
<td>fortunately, luckily</td>
<td>7.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīngqù</td>
<td>interest</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xīnjiāng</td>
<td>(an autonomous region of China)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīn jiào</td>
<td>to believe in a religion</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīnkǔ</td>
<td>to be arduous/tiring/hard work; to work hard/go through hardships</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīnli</td>
<td>in one's heart, in one's mind</td>
<td>7.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīnshǎng</td>
<td>to appreciate/enjoy/admire</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīnshì</td>
<td>something weighing on one's mind, worry</td>
<td>7.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīnvén</td>
<td>news</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Xīnvén Jiānbào&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;News Summary&quot;</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xīnvénpíăn</td>
<td>newsreel</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xīnvén Zhōukān</td>
<td>Newsweek</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**TVL Vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>xiū</td>
<td>to repair; to build (roads, reservoirs); to trim, to prune</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuǎn</td>
<td>to choose, to select; to elect</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xūduō</td>
<td>many, much</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuē hǎo</td>
<td>to learn from good examples, to learn to be a good person</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuēbúi</td>
<td>to learn, to master</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuēqǐ</td>
<td>semester, term (of school)</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuēshāngzhuī</td>
<td>student association</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuē yī</td>
<td>to study medicine</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xuēyuán</td>
<td>(academic) institute</td>
<td>8.2, 8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xūshēng</td>
<td>scholar</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xǔmuyè</td>
<td>livestock farming, animal husbandry</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xǔníànbān</td>
<td>training class</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xǔyāoliàng</td>
<td>level of need/demand (for an item)</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yán diànyīng</td>
<td>to show a movie</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yāng</td>
<td>kind, sort (bound form)</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yán'gē</td>
<td>to be strict, to be rigorous</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánhǎi</td>
<td>along the coast, coastal</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǎnjīng</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánjú (jiù, -jiū)</td>
<td>to study (in detail), to do</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>research on; research</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánjūshēng</td>
<td>graduate student</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánzhe</td>
<td>along(side)</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yánzhòng</td>
<td>to be serious, to be grave</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yàobǔrǎn</td>
<td>otherwise</td>
<td>8.2, 8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǎokǎn</td>
<td>to depend on</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǎoqǐlǔ</td>
<td>to require/request/demand</td>
<td>8.6, 8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yǎzhōu (Yǎ-)</td>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèdā</td>
<td>evening university</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèdàxué</td>
<td>evening university</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yě gāi</td>
<td>really should</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...yě hǎo, ...yě hào</td>
<td>whether...or...; both...and...</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yě jiù</td>
<td>accordingly, correspondingly, so</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yéye</td>
<td>grandfather (paternal)</td>
<td>7.1, 7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèyú</td>
<td>spare-time, after-hours, amateur</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yī</td>
<td>medical science, medicine (used in phrases like xuē yī)</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>as soon as</td>
<td>7.1, 7.4, 8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(used before direction words to mark direction with reference a point)</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yī</td>
<td>hundred million</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yībān lái shuō</td>
<td>generally speaking, ordinarily</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yībīān(r)...</td>
<td>doing...while doing...</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yìfǎngmiàn... on the one hand... on the other hand... for one thing... for another thing... 7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yìfǎngmiàn...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yháyuán (Yī-) the Summer Palace (in Běijīng) 8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yìjīāi one family; the whole family; the same family 7.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐ...jiū... as soon as 8.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐmiàn(r)... doing... while doing... 7.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐnián bǐ yǐnián duō more and more every year 8.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐnián sìjī in all four seasons of the year, all year round 8.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐshàng above, over (an amount) 8.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐshí for the moment 8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐshū art 8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐslán jiào Islam 8.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐtiān dào wān all day long 7.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yīwéi to think (mistakenly), to assume 8.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐxìà under (an amount) 8.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐxué medical science, medicine 7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐyuàn hospital 7.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐzhī all along, continuously, all the time (up until a certain point) 7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yònggōng to be hardworking (in one's studies) 7.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu excellent 7.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu to come up to (a certain level) 7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu also 7.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu anyway; after all 7.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu bānřě, (duī...) to be able to deal with (something) 7.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu bāngzhù to be helpful 7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu dǎoxǐ to make sense 7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒuèryuàn kindergarten 7.5, 8.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu guīju to have manners, to be proper 7.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒuǎo to be friendly, to be amicable 8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒulān to sightsee, to tour 8.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒulǐmào to be well mannered, to be polite 7.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu míng to be famous 8.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu qián to be rich 7.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu xiǎo to be effective; to be valid 7.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu xìngqù to be interested 7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu yánjiǔ to have done research on; to know a lot about 7.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǒu yòng to be useful 7.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǐ and (written style) 8.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuánlái original, former; originally, formerly; it turns out that... so...! (expresses finding out the true situation 7.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuányi to wish, would like, to want to; to be willing to 7.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuányīn reason, cause 7.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yúchēng</td>
<td>fishery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuè lái yuè...</td>
<td>more and more..., increasingly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuè...yuè...</td>
<td>the more...the more...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǔfā</td>
<td>grammar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yùn</td>
<td>to transport, to ship, to carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yùnnán</td>
<td>(a province of China)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yǔnqì</td>
<td>luck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yùyán</td>
<td>language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yùyánxué</td>
<td>linguistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yùyánxuéjiā</td>
<td>linguist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zài shuō</td>
<td>furthermore, besides, moreover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...zài shuō</td>
<td>...and then we'll see about it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zāo</td>
<td>a long time ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōhūn</td>
<td>early marriage; child marriage; to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>marry as a child, to marry early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zěnme gǎode</td>
<td>what's wrong; what's the matter; how</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zěnme (yǐ)huì shì</td>
<td>what's it all about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zěnme (yǐ)huì shì</td>
<td>like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zéren (rèn)</td>
<td>responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhāi huā(r)</td>
<td>to pick flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhān</td>
<td>to occupy (space), to take up (time);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to make up, to constitute (an amount)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎng</td>
<td>to grow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǎngdà</td>
<td>to grow up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhàngfù</td>
<td>husband</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhànhēng</td>
<td>war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhāōtuōdào</td>
<td>can't find, to be unable to find</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhāogu</td>
<td>to take care of; care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhāopìàn</td>
<td>photograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēi yìxílì</td>
<td>after this, as a result of this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhèjiāng (Zhèjiāng)</td>
<td>(a province in eastern China)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhème (yǐ)huì shì</td>
<td>like this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhèng</td>
<td>just, precisely, right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhèngcè</td>
<td>policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhèngfǔ</td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhènggē(r)</td>
<td>whole, entire; completely, in entirety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhènghāo(r)</td>
<td>it just so happens that, to happen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to, as it happens; just in time,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>just right, just enough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēngqǐ</td>
<td>to be neat, to be tidy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhēngzhì</td>
<td>politics; political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīgōng</td>
<td>staff and workers; worker or staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīhǎo</td>
<td>can only, to have to, to be forced to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...zhījiān</td>
<td>between...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīliàng (zhī-, zhī-)</td>
<td>quality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīshì</td>
<td>knowledge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Character</th>
<th>Pinyin</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zhēng yào</td>
<td>zhēngyào</td>
<td>provided that, as long as</td>
<td>7.7, 7.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhízào</td>
<td>zhízào</td>
<td>to manufacture</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǐzǎo chuàng</td>
<td>zhízàochuàng</td>
<td>manufacturing plant, factory</td>
<td>8.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-zhōng</td>
<td>-zhōng</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōng</td>
<td>zhōng</td>
<td>to plant; to grow</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhòng</td>
<td>zhòng</td>
<td>to be heavy</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngdiǎn</td>
<td>zhōngdiǎn</td>
<td>focal point, emphasis; key</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngdōng</td>
<td>Zhōngdōng</td>
<td>the Middle East</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguó Guójí</td>
<td>ZhōngguóGuójí</td>
<td>China International Travel Service (CITS)</td>
<td>8.1*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lǔxíngshè</td>
<td>Lǔxíngshè</td>
<td>China Travel Service (CTS)</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngguó Qīngnián</td>
<td>Zhōngguó Qīngnián</td>
<td>China Youth (a periodical)</td>
<td>7.2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōnghuá Rènmín</td>
<td>Zhōnghuá Rènmín</td>
<td>People's Republic of China</td>
<td>8.5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gònghéguó</td>
<td>Gònghéguó</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōng nán qīng nǚ</td>
<td>zhōng nán qīng nǚ</td>
<td>to regard males as superior to females</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngshān Gōngyuán</td>
<td>Zhōngshān Gōngyuán</td>
<td>Sun Yatsen Park</td>
<td>8.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngxīn</td>
<td>zhōngxīn</td>
<td>center, heart, core, hub; central</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zhōngxué shēng</td>
<td>Zhōngxué shēng</td>
<td>High School Student (a periodical)</td>
<td>7.2*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōngzú</td>
<td>zhōngzú</td>
<td>race; racial</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhōuxuàn</td>
<td>zhōuxuàn</td>
<td>weekly publication, weekly magazine</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhùānjīā</td>
<td>zhùānjīā</td>
<td>specialist, expert</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuān qiān</td>
<td>zuān qiān</td>
<td>to earn money, to make money</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuānyē</td>
<td>zuānyē</td>
<td>special line/field/discipline</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuānyēhuá</td>
<td>zuānyēhuá</td>
<td>to specialize; specialization</td>
<td>8.3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhūrèn</td>
<td>zhūrèn</td>
<td>host; master</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǔxiālai</td>
<td>zhǔxiālai</td>
<td>to move and stay (in a place), to settle down</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhūyáo</td>
<td>zhūyáo</td>
<td>major, main, essential; mainly, essentially</td>
<td>7.5*, 8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-zhūyī</td>
<td>-zhūyī</td>
<td>-ism, doctrine (bound form)</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhūdēn</td>
<td>zhūdēn</td>
<td>capital</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhūcōng</td>
<td>zhūcōng</td>
<td>ever since</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīrán</td>
<td>zhīrán</td>
<td>nature; to be natural; naturally; in the normal course of events</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhīrán kēxué</td>
<td>zhīrán kēxué</td>
<td>natural sciences</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǐxué</td>
<td>zǐxué</td>
<td>to study by oneself</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǐyōu</td>
<td>zǐyōu</td>
<td>freedom; to be free</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǐyōu shìchāng</td>
<td>zǐyōu shìchāng</td>
<td>free market</td>
<td>7.5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zǐyuán</td>
<td>zǐyuán</td>
<td>(natural) resources</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zhǐzhīqū</td>
<td>zhǐzhīqū</td>
<td>autonomous region</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōng</td>
<td>zōng</td>
<td>always; inevitably, without exception; after all, in any case</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōng de lái shuō</td>
<td>zōng de lái shuō</td>
<td>generally speaking, on the whole</td>
<td>8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōng gōng chéngshī</td>
<td>zōng gōng chéngshī</td>
<td>chief engineer</td>
<td>8.5*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōng jiào</td>
<td>zōng jiào</td>
<td>(organized) religion</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōng miàn jì</td>
<td>zōng miàn jì</td>
<td>total area</td>
<td>8.3*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōng shòurú</td>
<td>zōng shòurú</td>
<td>total income</td>
<td>8.7*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zōng tóng</td>
<td>zōng tóng</td>
<td>president</td>
<td>7.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-zú</td>
<td>-zú</td>
<td>nationality</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Module &amp; Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zuǐ</td>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>7.7*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuǐ</td>
<td>crime; guilt</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuǐjin</td>
<td>lately, recently; the near future, soon</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuǒ</td>
<td>to be, to act as</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-zuǒ</td>
<td>(counter for massive objects)</td>
<td>8.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuǒbulǐnō</td>
<td>to be unable to do</td>
<td>7.4*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuǒ lǐbāi</td>
<td>to worship, to attend a religious service</td>
<td>7.7*, 8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòxia</td>
<td>to sit down</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòyè</td>
<td>homework</td>
<td>8.6*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuòzhi</td>
<td>to organize; organization</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>